[Cloud Computing](https://azure.microsoft.com/overview/what-is-cloud-computing) is the delivery of computing services—servers, storage, databases, networking, software, analytics, intelligence and more—over the internet (the cloud), enabling faster innovation, flexible resources, and economies of scale. You typically pay only for cloud services you use, helping lower your operating costs, run your infrastructure more efficiently, and scale as your business needs change.

The company providing these services is referred to as a cloud provider. Some example providers are Microsoft Azure, Amazon Web Services (AWS), and the Google Cloud Platform (GCP). The cloud provider is responsible for the physical hardware required to execute your work, in addition to keeping it up to date. Every business is unique and has different needs. To meet those needs, cloud computing providers offer a wide range of services. Typically, these services include:

* **Compute power** - such as Linux servers or web applications.
* **Storage** - such as files and databases.
* **Networking** - such as secure connections between the cloud provider and your company.
* **Analytics** - such as visualizing telemetry and performance data.

**Cloud computing services**

The goal of cloud computing is to make running a business easier and more efficient, whether it's a small start-up or a large enterprise. Every business is unique and has different needs. To meet those needs, cloud computing providers offer a wide range of services.

You need to have a basic understanding of some of the services it provides. Let's briefly discuss the two most common services that all cloud providers offer – *compute power* and *storage*.

**Compute power**

When you send an email, book a reservation on the Internet, pay a bill online, or even take this Microsoft Learn module you're interacting with cloud-based servers that are processing each request and returning a response. As a consumer, we're all dependent on the computing services provided by the various cloud providers that make up the Internet.

When you build solutions using cloud computing, you can choose how you want work to be done based on your resources and needs. For example, if you want to have more control and responsibility over maintenance, you could create a *virtual machine* (VM). A VM is an emulation of a computer - just like your desktop or laptop you're using now. Each VM includes an operating system and hardware that appears to the user like a physical computer running Windows or Linux. You can then install whatever software you need to do the tasks you want to run in the cloud.

The difference is that you don't have to buy any of the hardware or install the OS. The cloud provider runs your virtual machine on a physical server in one of their datacenters - often sharing that server with other VMs (isolated and secure). With the cloud, you can have a VM ready to go in minutes at less cost than a physical computer.

VMs aren't the only computing choice - there are two other popular options: *containers* and *serverless computing*.

**What are containers?**

**Containers** provide a consistent, isolated execution environment for applications. They're similar to VMs except they don't require a guest operating system. Instead, the application and all its dependencies is packaged into a "container" and then a standard runtime environment is used to execute the app. This allows the container to start up in just a few seconds, because there's no OS to boot and initialize. You only need the app to launch.

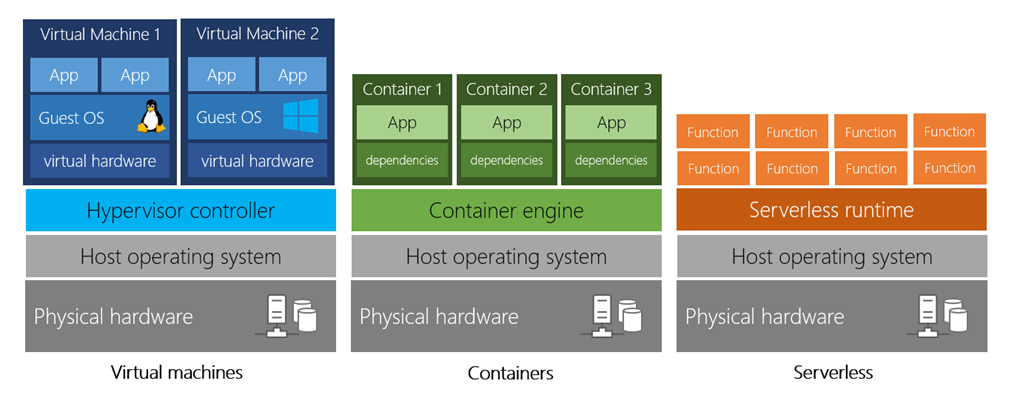
The open-source project, Docker, is one of the leading platforms for managing containers. Docker containers provide an efficient, lightweight approach to application deployment because they allow different components of the application to be deployed independently into different containers. Multiple containers can be run on a single machine, and containers can be moved between machines. The portability of the container makes it easy for applications to be deployed in multiple environments, either on-premises or in the cloud, often with no changes to the application.

**What is serverless computing?**

**Serverless computing** lets you run application code without creating, configuring, or maintaining a server. The core idea is that your application is broken into separate *functions* that run when triggered by some action. This is ideal for automated tasks - for example, you can build a serverless process that automatically sends an email confirmation after a customer makes an online purchase.

The serverless model differs from VMs and containers in which you only pay for the processing time used by each function as it executes. VMs and containers are charged while they're running - even if the applications on them are idle. This architecture doesn't work for every app - but when the app logic can be separated to independent units, you can test them separately, update them separately, and launch them in microseconds, making this approach the fastest option for deployment.

Here's a diagram comparing the three compute approaches we've covered.



**Storage**

Most devices and applications read and/or write data. Here are some examples:

* Buying a movie ticket online
* Looking up the price of an online item
* Taking a picture
* Sending an email
* Leaving a voicemail

In all of these cases, data is either *read* (looking up a price) or *written* (taking a picture). The type of data and how it's stored can be different in each of these cases.

Cloud providers typically offer services that can handle all of these types of data. For example, if you wanted to store text or a movie clip, you could use a file on disk. If you had a set of relationships such as an address book, you could take a more structured approach like using a database.

The advantage to using cloud-based data storage is you can scale to meet your needs. If you find that you need more space to store your movie clips, you can pay a little more and add to your available space. In some cases, the storage can even expand and contract automatically - so you pay for exactly what you need at any given point in time.

✔️ Every business has different needs and requirements, and cloud computing is flexible and cost-efficient. The goal of cloud computing is to make running a business easier and more efficient, whether it's a small start-up or a large enterprise.

**CapEx VS OpEx**

In the past, companies needed to acquire physical premises and infrastructure to start their business. There was a substantial up-front cost in hardware and infrastructure to start or grow a business. Cloud computing provides services to customers without significant upfront costs or equipment setup time.

These two approaches to investment are referred to as:

* **Capital Expenditure (CapEx)**: CapEx is the spending of money on physical infrastructure up front, and then deducting that expense from your tax bill over time. CapEx is an upfront cost, which has a value that reduces over time.
* **Operational Expenditure (OpEx)**: OpEx is spending money on services or products now and being billed for them now. You can deduct this expense from your tax bill in the same year. There's no upfront cost. You pay for a service or product as you use it.

**CapEx computing costs**

A typical on-premises datacenter includes costs such as:

**Server costs**

This area includes all hardware components and the cost of supporting them. When purchasing servers, make sure to design fault tolerance and redundancy, such as server clustering, redundant power supplies, and uninterruptible power supplies. When a server needs to be replaced or added to a datacenter, you need to pay for the computer. This can affect your immediate cash flow because you must pay for the server up front.

**Storage costs**

This area includes all storage hardware components and the cost of supporting it. Based on the application and level of fault tolerance, centralized storage can be expensive. For larger organizations, you can create tiers of storage where more expensive fault‐tolerant storage is used for critical applications and lower expense storage is used for lower priority data.

**Network costs**

Networking costs include all on-premises hardware components, including cabling, switches, access points, and routers. This also includes wide area network (WAN) and Internet connections.

**Backup and archive costs**

This is the cost to back up, copy, or archive data. Options might include setting up a backup to or from the cloud. There's an upfront cost for the hardware and additional costs for backup maintenance and consumables like tapes.

**Organization continuity and disaster recovery costs**

Along with server fault tolerance and redundancy, you need to plan for how to recover from a disaster and continue operating. Your plan should consist of creating a disaster recovery site. It could also include backup generators. Most of these are upfront costs, especially if you build a disaster recovery site, but there's an additional ongoing cost for the infrastructure and its maintenance.

**Datacenter infrastructure costs**

These are costs for construction and building equipment, as well as future renovation and remodeling costs that may arise as demands grow. Additionally, this infrastructure incurs operational expenses for electricity, floor space, cooling, and building maintenance.

**Technical personnel**

While not a capital expenditure, the personnel required to work on your infrastructure are specific to on-premises datacenters. You will need the technical expertise and workforce to install, deploy, and manage the systems in the datacenter and at the disaster recovery site.

**OpEx cloud computing costs**

With cloud computing, many of the costs associated with an on-premises datacenter are shifted to the service provider. Instead of thinking about physical hardware and datacenter costs, cloud computing has a different set of costs. For accounting purposes, all these costs are operational expenses:

**Leasing software and customized features**

Using a pay-per-use model requires actively managing your subscriptions to ensure users do not misuse the services, and that provisioned accounts are being utilized and not wasted. As soon as the provider provisions resources, billing starts. It is your responsibility to de-provision the resources when they aren't in use so that you can minimize costs.

**Scaling charges based on usage/demand instead of fixed hardware or capacity.**

Cloud computing can bill in various ways, such as the number of users or CPU usage time. However, billing categories can also include allocated RAM, I/O operations per second (IOPS), and storage space. Plan for backup traffic and disaster recovery traffic to determine the bandwidth needed.

**Billing at the user or organization level.**

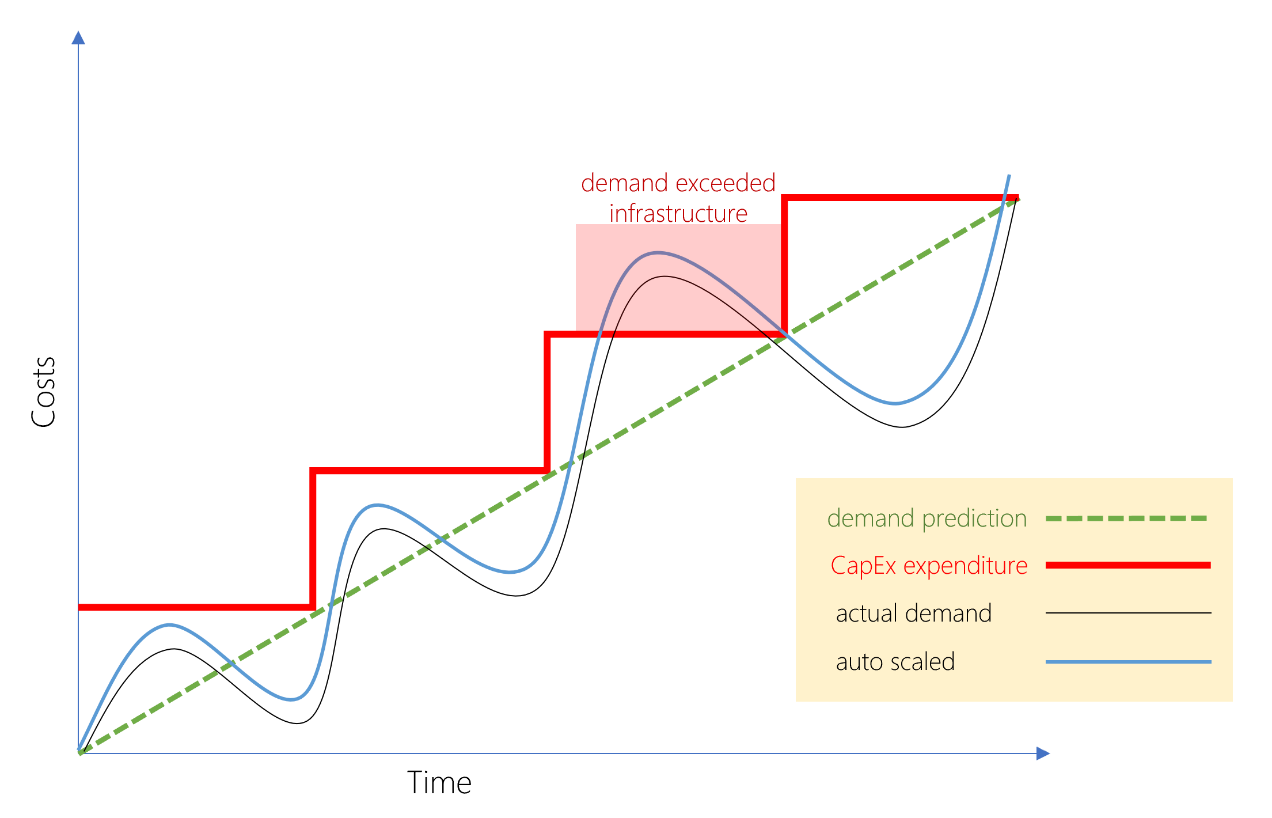
The subscription (pay-per-use) model is a computing billing method that is designed for both organizations and users. The organization or user is billed for the services used, typically on a recurring basis. You can scale, customize, and provision computing resources, including software, storage, and development platforms. For example, when using a dedicated cloud service, you could pay based on server hardware and usage.

**Benefits of CapEx**

With capital expenditures, you plan your expenses at the start of a project or budget period. Your costs are fixed, meaning you know exactly how much is being spent. This is appealing when you need to predict the expenses before a project starts due to a limited budget.

**Benefits of OpEx**

Demand and growth can be unpredictable and can outpace expectation, which is a challenge for the CapEx model as shown in the following graph.



Copy

Graph shows costs versus time, with time on the horizontal axis. Lines are plotted for demand prediction, actual demand costs, capital expenditure costs, and auto scaled costs. The demand prediction goes up linearly over time. Actual costs form an increasing sine wave style plotting. Capital expenditure costs go up in a stairstep shape as infrustructure is added to meet exceeded actual demand. Auto scaled costs nearly align to the sine wave style curve of the actual demand.

With the OpEx model, companies wanting to try a new product or service don't need to invest in equipment. Instead, they pay as much or as little for the infrastructure as required.

OpEx is particularly appealing if the demand fluctuates or is unknown. Cloud services are often said to be *agile*. Cloud agility is the ability to rapidly change an IT infrastructure to adapt to the evolving needs of the business. For example, if your service peaks one month, you can scale to demand and pay a larger bill for the month. If the following month the demand drops, you can reduce the used resources and be charged less. This agility lets you manage your costs dynamically, optimizing spending as requirements change.

### Infrastructure as a service (IaaS)

Infrastructure as a Service is the most flexible category of cloud services. It aims to give you the most control over the provided hardware that runs your application (IT infrastructure servers and virtual machines (VMs), storage, and operating systems). Instead of buying hardware, with IaaS, you rent it. It's an instant computing infrastructure, provisioned and managed over the internet.

**Note**

When using IaaS, ensuring that a service is up and running is a shared responsibility: the cloud provider is responsible for ensuring the cloud infrastructure is functioning correctly; the cloud customer is responsible for ensuring the service they are using is configured correctly, is up to date, and is available to their customers. This is referred to as the **shared responsibility model**.

IaaS is commonly used in the following scenarios:

* **Migrating workloads.** Typically, IaaS facilities are managed in a similar way as on-premises infrastructure and provide an easy migration path for moving existing applications to the cloud.
* **Test and development.** Teams can quickly set up and dismantle test and development environments, bringing new applications to market faster. IaaS makes scaling development and testing environments, fast and economical.
* **Storage, backup, and recovery.** Organizations avoid the capital outlay and complexity of storage management, which typically requires skilled staff to manage data and meet legal and compliance requirements. IaaS is useful for managing unpredictable demand and steadily growing storage needs. IaaS can also simplify the planning and management of backup and recovery systems.

### Platform as a service (PaaS)

PaaS provides an environment for building, testing, and deploying software applications. The goal of PaaS is to help you create an application quickly without managing the underlying infrastructure. For example, when deploying a web application using PaaS, you don't have to install an operating system, web server, or even system updates.

PaaS is a complete development and deployment environment in the cloud, with resources that enable organizations to deliver everything from simple cloud-based apps to sophisticated cloud-enabled enterprise applications. Resources are purchased from a cloud service provider on a pay-as-you-go basis and accessed over a secure Internet connection.

PaaS is commonly used in the following scenarios:

* **Development framework.** PaaS provides a framework that developers can build upon to develop or customize cloud-based applications. Just like Microsoft Excel macro, PaaS lets developers create applications using built-in software components. Cloud features such as scalability, high-availability, and multi-tenant capability are included, reducing the amount of coding that developers must do.
* **Analytics or business intelligence.** Tools provided as a service with PaaS allow organizations to analyze and mine their data. They can find insights and patterns, and predict outcomes to improve business decisions such as forecasting, product design, and investment returns.

### Software as a service (SaaS)

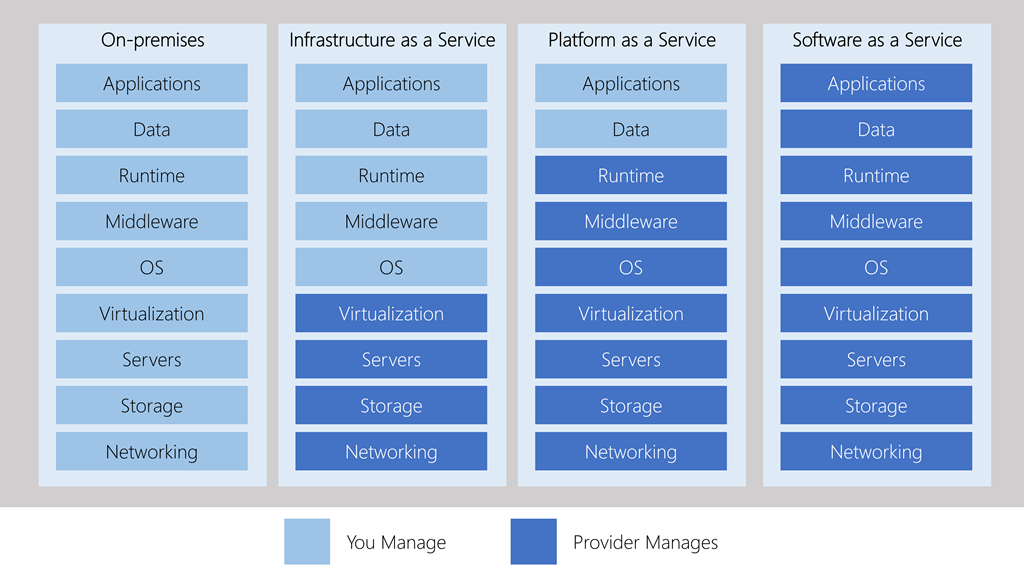
SaaS is software that is centrally hosted and managed for the end customer. It is usually based on an architecture where one version of the application is used for all customers, and licensed through a monthly or annual subscription. Microsoft 365, Skype, and Dynamics CRM Online are perfect examples of SaaS software.

## Cost and Ownership

| **TABLE 1** | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | **IaaS** | **PaaS** | **SaaS** |
| Upfront costs | There are no upfront costs. Users pay only for what they consume. | There are no upfront costs. Users pay only for what they consume. | Users have no upfront costs; they pay a subscription, typically on a monthly or annual basis. |
| User ownership | The user is responsible for the purchase, installation, configuration, and management of their own software, operating systems, middleware, and applications. | The user is responsible for the development of their own applications. However, they are not responsible for managing the server or infrastructure. This allows the user to focus on the application or workload they want to run. | Users just use the application software; they are not responsible for any maintenance or management of that software. |
| Cloud provider ownership | The cloud provider is responsible for ensuring that the underlying cloud infrastructure (such as virtual machines, storage, and networking) is available for the user. | The cloud provider is responsible for operating system management, network, and service configuration. Cloud providers are typically responsible for everything apart from the application that a user wants to run. They provide a complete managed platform on which to run the application. | The cloud provider is responsible for the provision, management, and maintenance of the application software. |

## Management responsibilities

One thing to understand is that these categories are layers on top of each other. For example, PaaS adds a layer on top of IaaS by providing a level of abstraction. The abstraction has the benefit of hiding the details that you may not care about, so that you can get to coding quicker. However, one aspect of the abstraction is that you have less control over the underlying hardware. The following illustration shows a list of resources that you manage and that your service provider manages in each cloud service category.



Copy

First column, on-premises, shows all elements managed by you. Second, infrastructure as a service, moves virtualization, servers, storage, and networking to the cloud provider. Third, platform as a service, moves runtime, middleware, and OS to the cloud provider. And fourth, software as a service, moves all elements to the cloud provider, with applications and data being the last elements moving.

* IaaS requires the most user management of all the cloud services. The user is responsible for managing the operating systems, data, and applications.
* PaaS requires less user management. The cloud provider manages the operating systems, and the user is responsible for the applications and data they run and store.
* SaaS requires the least amount of management. The cloud provider is responsible for managing everything, and the end user just uses the software.

## Combine cloud services to fit your needs : IaaS, PaaS, and SaaS each contain different levels of managed services. You may easily use a combination of these types of infrastructure. You could use Microsoft 365 on your company's computers (SaaS), and in Azure, you could host your VMs (IaaS) and use Azure SQL Database (PaaS) to store your data. With the cloud's flexibility, you can use any combination that provides you with the maximum result.

# Compliance terms and requirements

When selecting a cloud provider to host your solutions, you should understand how that provider can help you comply with regulations and standards. Some questions to ask about a potential provider include:

* How compliant is the cloud provider when it comes to handling sensitive data?
* How compliant are the services offered by the cloud provider?
* How can I deploy my own cloud-based solutions to scenarios that have accreditation or compliance requirements?
* What terms are part of the privacy statement for the provider?

### Compliance Offerings

The following list provides details about some of the compliance offerings available.

* **Criminal Justice Information Services (CJIS)**. Any US state or local agency that wants to access the FBI's CJIS database is required to adhere to the CJIS Security Policy. Azure is the only major cloud provider that contractually commits to conformance with the CJIS Security Policy, which commits Microsoft to adhering to the same requirements that law enforcement and public safety entities must meet.
* **Cloud Security Alliance (CSA) STAR Certification**. Azure, Intune, and Microsoft Power BI have obtained STAR Certification, which involves a rigorous independent third-party assessment of a cloud provider's security posture. This STAR certification is based on achieving ISO/IEC 27001 certification and meeting criteria specified in the Cloud Controls Matrix (CCM). This certification demonstrates that a cloud service provider:
  + Conforms to the applicable requirements of ISO/IEC 27001.
  + Has addressed issues critical to cloud security as outlined in the CCM.
  + Has been assessed against the STAR Capability Maturity Model for the management of activities in CCM control areas.
* **General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR)**. As of May 25, 2018, a European privacy law — GDPR — is in effect. GDPR imposes new rules on companies, government agencies, non-profits, and other organizations that offer goods and services to people in the European Union (EU), or that collect and analyze data tied to EU residents. The GDPR applies no matter where you are located.
* **EU Model Clauses**. Microsoft offers customers EU Standard Contractual Clauses that provide contractual guarantees around transfers of personal data outside of the EU. Microsoft is the first company to receive joint approval from the EU's Article 29 Working Party that the contractual privacy protections Azure delivers to its enterprise cloud customers meet current EU standards for international transfers of data. This ensures that Azure customers can use Microsoft services to move data freely through Microsoft's cloud from Europe to the rest of the world.
* **Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)**. HIPAA is a US federal law that regulates patient Protected Health Information (PHI). Azure offers customers a HIPAA Business Associate Agreement (BAA), stipulating adherence to certain security and privacy provisions in HIPAA and the **Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health (HITECH)** Act. To assist customers in their individual compliance efforts, Microsoft offers a BAA to Azure customers as a contract addendum.
* **International Organization for Standardization (ISO) and the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) 27018**. Microsoft is the first cloud provider to have adopted the ISO/IEC 27018 code of practice, covering the processing of personal information by cloud service providers.
* **Multi-Tier Cloud Security (MTCS) Singapore**. After rigorous assessments conducted by the MTCS Certification Body, Microsoft cloud services received MTCS 584:2013 certification across all three service classifications:
  + Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS)
  + Platform as a Service (PaaS)
  + Software as a Service (SaaS)

Microsoft was the first global cloud solution provider (CSP) to receive this certification across all three classifications.

* **Service Organization Controls (SOC) 1, 2, and 3**. Microsoft-covered cloud services are audited at least annually against the SOC report framework by independent third-party auditors. The Microsoft cloud services audit covers controls for data security, availability, processing integrity, and confidentiality as applicable to in-scope trust principles for each service.
* **National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Cybersecurity Framework (CSF)**. NIST CSF is a voluntary Framework that consists of standards, guidelines, and best practices to manage cybersecurity-related risks. Microsoft cloud services have undergone independent, third-party Federal Risk and Authorization Management Program (FedRAMP) Moderate and High Baseline audits, and are certified according to the FedRAMP standards. Additionally, through a validated assessment performed by the Health Information Trust Alliance (HITRUST), a leading security and privacy standards development and accreditation organization, Microsoft 365 is certified to the objectives specified in the NIST CSF.
* **UK Government G-Cloud**. The UK Government G-Cloud is a cloud computing certification for services used by government entities in the United Kingdom. Azure has received official accreditation from the UK Government Pan Government Accreditor.

# Understand Availability Zones in Azure

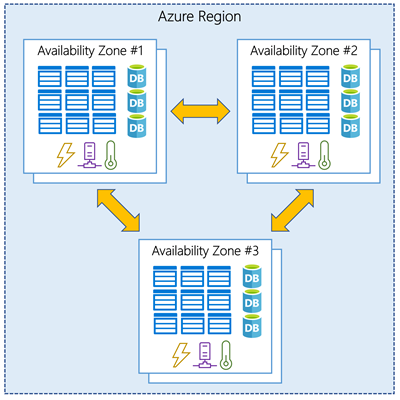
* 5 minutes

You want to ensure your services and data are redundant so you can protect your information in case of failure. When you are hosting your infrastructure, this requires creating duplicate hardware environments. Azure can help make your app highly available through Availability Zones.

## What is an Availability Zone?

Availability Zones are physically separate datacenters within an Azure region.

Each Availability Zone is made up of one or more datacenters equipped with independent power, cooling, and networking. It is set up to be an isolation boundary. If one zone goes down, the other continues working. Availability Zones are connected through high-speed, private fiber-optic networks.



### Supported regions

Not every region has support for Availability Zones. The following regions have a minimum of three separate zones to ensure resiliency.

* Central US
* East US 2
* West US 2
* West Europe
* France Central
* North Europe
* Southeast Asia

**Tip**

The list of supported regions is expanding - check the documentation for the latest information.

### Using Availability Zones in your apps

You can use Availability Zones to run mission-critical applications and build high-availability into your application architecture by co-locating your compute, storage, networking, and data resources within a zone and replicating in other zones. Keep in mind that there could be a cost to duplicating your services and transferring data between zones.

Availability Zones are primarily for VMs, managed disks, load balancers, and SQL databases. Azure services that support Availability Zones fall into two categories:

* **Zonal services** – you pin the resource to a specific zone (for example, virtual machines, managed disks, IP addresses)
* **Zone-redundant services** – platform replicates automatically across zones (for example, zone-redundant storage, SQL Database).

Check the documentation to determine which elements of your architecture you can associate with an Availability Zone.

# Understand Region Pairs in Azure

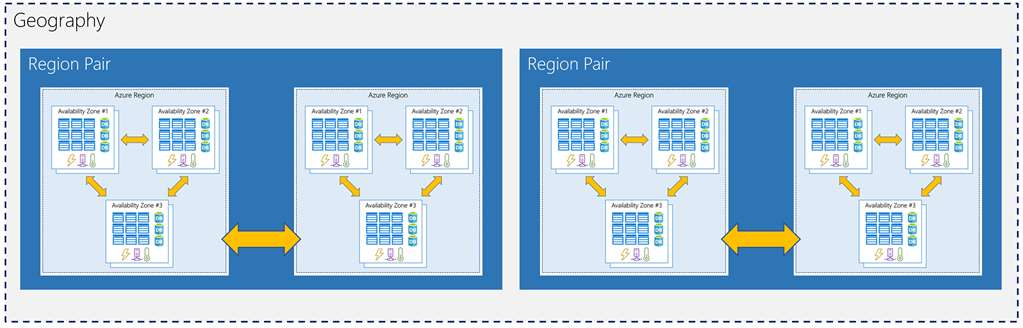
* 5 minutes

Availability zones are created using one or more datacenters, and there is a minimum of three zones within a single region. However, it's possible that a large enough disaster could cause an outage large enough to affect even two datacenters. That's why Azure also creates region pairs.

## What is a region pair?

Each Azure region is always paired with another region within the same geography (such as US, Europe, or Asia) at least **300 miles away**. This approach allows for the replication of resources (such as virtual machine storage) across a geography that helps reduce the likelihood of interruptions due to events such as natural disasters, civil unrest, power outages, or physical network outages affecting both regions at once. If a region in a pair was affected by a natural disaster, for instance, services would automatically fail over to the other region in its region pair.

Examples of region pairs in Azure are West US paired with East US, and SouthEast Asia paired with East Asia.



Since the pair of regions is directly connected and far enough apart to be isolated from regional disasters, you can use them to provide reliable services and data redundancy. Some services offer automatic geo-redundant storage using region pairs.

Additional advantages of region pairs include:

* If there's an extensive Azure outage, one region out of every pair is prioritized to make sure at least one is restored as quick as possible for applications hosted in that region pair.
* Planned Azure updates are rolled out to paired regions one region at a time to minimize downtime and risk of application outage.
* Data continues to reside within the same geography as its pair (except for Brazil South) for tax and law enforcement jurisdiction purposes.

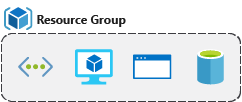
Having a broadly distributed set of datacenters allows Azure to provide a high guarantee of availability. Let's explore what that means.

## What are resource groups?

Resource groups are a fundamental element of the Azure platform. A resource group is a logical container for resources deployed on Azure. These resources are anything you create in an Azure subscription like virtual machines, Application Gateways, and CosmosDB instances. All resources must be in a resource group and a resource can only be a member of a single resource group. Many resources can be moved between resource groups with some services having specific limitations or requirements to move. Resource groups can't be nested. Before any resource can be provisioned, you need a resource group for it to be placed in.

### Logical grouping

Resource groups exist to help manage and organize your Azure resources. By placing resources of similar usage, type, or location, you can provide some order and organization to resources you create in Azure. Logical grouping is the aspect that you're most interested in here, since there's a lot of disorder among our resources.



### Life cycle

If you delete a resource group, all resources contained within are also deleted. Organizing resources by life cycle can be useful in non-production environments, where you might try an experiment, but then dispose of it when done. Resource groups make it easy to remove a set of resources at once.

### Authorization

Resource groups are also a scope for applying role-based access control (RBAC) permissions. By applying RBAC permissions to a resource group, you can ease administration and limit access to allow only what is needed.

## Create a Resource Group

Resource groups can be created by using the following methods:

* Azure portal
* Azure PowerShell
* Azure CLI
* Templates
* Azure SDKs (like .NET, Java)

Let's walk through the steps you'd take to create a resource group in the Azure portal. If you'd like to follow along in your own subscription, you may.

1. Open a web browser and sign into the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/).

**Important**

Make sure to use your own subscription. When you are in the free sandbox environment, it will not allow you to create resource groups. You can tell which subscription you are using by looking at the tenant name under your profile picture. You can switch tenants by selecting your profile picture and selecting **Switch Directory** from the options menu.

1. On the Azure portal menu or from the **Home** page, select **Create a resource**.
2. Type **Resource group** in the search box and hit Enter. If this doesn't go immediately to the resource group creation, select **Resource group** from the search results and select the **Create** button.
3. Select the subscription it should be in, and select the region for the resource group.
4. Enter your resource group name, let's use **msftlearn-core-infrastructure-rg**.
5. Select **Review + Create** and then, once it is validated, select **Create** to create the resource group.

That's it, you've created a resource group that you can now use when you deploy Azure resources. Let's take a closer look at this resource group and some important things to consider.

## Explore a resource group and add a resource

On the Azure portal menu or from the **Home** page, select **Resource groups**, and select your newly created resource group. Note that you may also see a resource group called **NetworkWatcherRG**. You can ignore this resource group, it's created automatically to enable Network Watcher in Azure virtual networks.

On the Overview panel, there's the basic information about the resource group like the subscription it's in, the subscription ID, any tags that are applied, and a history of the deployments to this resource group. You'll cover tags in the next unit. The deployments link takes you to a new panel with the history of all deployments to this resource group. Anytime you create a resource, it's a deployment, and you see that history for the resource group here.

Across the top you can add more resources, change the columns in the list, move the resource group to another subscription, or delete it entirely.

On the left menu, there are a number of options

You don't have any resources in this resource group yet, so the list at the bottom is empty. Let's create a couple resources inside the resource group.

1. Select **+ Add** at the top or select the **Create resources**; either will work.
2. Search for **Virtual Network**. The first result should be the virtual network resource. Select it, and on the next screen select **Create**.
3. Name the virtual network msftlearn-vnet1. For the **Resource group** drop-down, select the resource group that you created earlier.
4. Select **Review + create** and then select **Create** to add the virtual network to your resource group.
5. Repeat the virtual network creation steps again to create one more virtual network. Name the network msftlearn-vnet2 and make sure to place the virtual network in the resource group that you created earlier.
6. Go back to your resource group, and on the **Overview** panel you should see the two virtual networks you created.

Our resource group now contains two virtual network resources because you specified in our deployment (when you created the resources) which resource group you wanted the virtual network to be placed in. You could create additional resources inside this resource group, or you could create additional resource groups in the subscription to deploy resources into.

When creating resources, you usually have the option to create a new resource group as an alternative to using an existing resource group. This simplifies the process a bit, but as you see in your new organization, can lead to resources spread across resource groups with little thought as to how to organize them.

## Use resource groups for organization

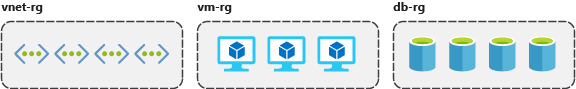
So how can you use resource groups to your advantage in your new organization? There are some guidelines and best practices that can help with the organization.

### Consistent naming convention

You can start with using an understandable naming convention. You named our resource group **msftlearn-core-infrastructure-rg**. You've given some indication of what it's used for (**msftlearn**), the types of resources contained within (**core-infrastructure**), and the type of resource it is itself (**rg**). This descriptive name gives us a better idea of what it is. If you had named it **my-resource-group** or **rg1**, you have no idea on a glance of what the usage may be. In this case, you can deduce that there are probably core pieces of infrastructure contained within. If you created additional virtual networks, storage accounts, or other resources the company may consider core infrastructure, you could place them here as well, to improve the organization of our resources. Naming conventions can vary widely between and even within companies, but some planning can help.

### Organizing principles

Resource groups can be organized in a number of ways, let's take a look at a few examples. You might put all resources that are core infrastructure into this resource group. But you could also organize them strictly by resource type. For example, put all virtual networks in one resource group, all virtual machines in another resource group, and all Azure Cosmos DB instances in yet another resource group.



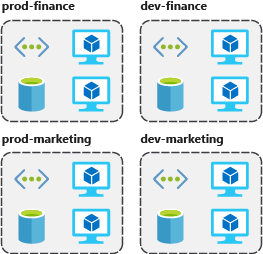
You could organize them by environment (prod, qa, dev). In this case, all production resources are in one resource group, all test resources are in another resource group, and so on.



You could organize them by department (marketing, finance, human resources). Marketing resources go in one resource group, finance in another resource group, and HR in a third resource group.



You could even use a combination of these strategies and organize by environment and department. Put production finance resources in one resource group, dev finance resources in another, and the same for the marketing resources.



There are a few factors that can play into the strategy you use to organize resources: authorization, resource life cycle, and billing.

#### Organizing for authorization

Since resource groups are a scope of RBAC, you can organize resources by who needs to administer them. If your database administration team is responsible for managing all of your Azure SQL Database instances, putting them in the same resource group would simplify administration. You could give them the proper permissions at the resource group level to administer the databases within the resource group. Similarly, the database administration team could be denied access to the resource group with virtual networks, so they don't inadvertently make changes to resources outside the scope of their responsibility.

#### Organizing for life cycle

We mentioned earlier that resource groups serve as the life cycle for the resources within it. If you delete a resource group, you delete all the resources in it. Use this to your advantage, especially in areas where resources are more disposable, like non-production environments. If you deploy 10 servers for a project that you know will only last a couple of months, you might put them all in a single resource group. One resource group is easier to clean up than 10 or more resource groups.

#### Organizing for billing

Lastly, placing resources in the same resource group is a way to group them for usage in billing reports. If you're trying to understand how your costs are distributed in your Azure environment, grouping them by resource group is one way to filter and sort the data to better understand where costs are allocated.

## Summary

The bottom line is that you have flexibility in how to organize resources in your resource groups. Put some thought into it so that you have a coherent approach to how you use resource groups in your Azure environment.

## Azure Resource

* Object **used to manage services** in Azure
* Represents **service lifecycle**
* Saved as **JSON definition**

## Resource Groups

* **Grouping** of resources
* Holds **logically related** resources
* Typically organizing by
  + **Type**
  + **Lifecycle** (app, environment)
  + **Department**
  + **Billing**,
  + **Location** or
  + **combination of those**

### Additional Info

* Each **resource must** be in one, and **only one resource group**
* Resource **groups have their own location** assigned
* Resources in the resource groups **can reside in a different locations**
* Resources **can be moved** between the resource groups
* Resource **groups can’t be nested**
* Organize based on your organization needs but consider
  + Billing
  + Security and access management
  + Application Lifecycle

# Use tagging to organize resources

* 8 minutes

You've gone through your resources and moved them into resource groups that are more organized than before. But what if resources have multiple uses? How do you better search, filter, and organize these resources? Tags can be helpful as you look to improve organization of your Azure resources.

## What are tags?

Tags are name/value pairs of text data that you can apply to resources and resource groups. Tags allow you to associate custom details about your resource, in addition to the standard Azure properties a resource has the following properties:

* department (like finance, marketing, and more)
* environment (prod, test, dev)
* cost center
* life cycle and automation (like shutdown and startup of virtual machines)

A resource can have up to 50 tags. The name is limited to 512 characters for all types of resources except storage accounts, which have a limit of 128 characters. The tag value is limited to 256 characters for all types of resources. Tags aren't inherited from parent resources. Not all resource types support tags, and tags can't be applied to classic resources.

Tags can be added and manipulated through the Azure portal, Azure CLI, Azure PowerShell, Resource Manager templates, and through the REST API. For example, to add a resource tag to a virtual network using the Azure CLI, you could use the following command:

Azure CLICopy

az resource tag --tags Department=Finance \

--resource-group msftlearn-core-infrastructure-rg \

--name msftlearn-vnet1 \

--resource-type "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks"

You can use Azure Policy to automatically add or enforce tags for resources your organization creates based on policy conditions that you define. For example, you could require that a value for the Department tag is entered when someone in your organization creates a virtual network in a specific resource group.

## Apply tags to resources

Let's apply some tags to the resources you created. Recall that you created a resource group **msftlearn-core-infrastructure-rg** and two virtual networks inside that resource group, **msftlearn-vnet1** and **msftlearn-vnet2**. The names of the virtual networks are relatively generic, so you'd like to associate the virtual networks with services from different departments.

1. Open the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/), and navigate to your **msftlearn-core-infrastructure-rg** resource group.
2. On the **Overview** tab of your resource group, you should see your two virtual networks listed. The default view doesn't display the tags column, so you'll add that to the display. Select **Edit columns** at the top. In the **Available columns** list, select **Tags** and click **->** to add it to the **Selected columns** list. Click **Apply** to apply your changes.

You should now see the tags column, but it will be empty since you haven't added any tags yet. You'll add the tags directly here.

1. You can also add tags to any resource that supports it on the resource's **Tags** panel. In the list of resources, you should see an ellipsis menu (**...**). Select the **...** for the **msftlearn-vnet1** resource, then select **Edit tags** to display the **Edit tags** dialog.
2. You'll add a couple tags to this virtual network. In the **Name** box type Department, and in the **Value** box type Finance. Click **Save** to save your changes.
3. Do the same steps for the **msftlearn-vnet2** virtual network. For this virtual network, add a Department tag to the resource with value Marketing.

You should now see your tags applied to each resource.

1. Add tags to both of these resources in bulk. Select the checkbox on the left for each of the virtual networks and click **Assign tags** in the top menu. (The option may be contained inside an **...** menu.) By selecting multiple resources, you can add a tag to them in bulk, making it easy if you have multiple resources you want to apply the same tag to.

Add the Environment:Training tag to the resources. You should see in the dialog that the tag will be applied to each of the virtual networks.

Back in the resource list you'll now see the tags column with multiple values. If your window width is limited, you may see an ellipsis indicating more tags are applied to each resource that are not shown.

1. Take a look at how you can use tags to filter your resources. On the Azure portal menu or from the **Home** page, select **All resources**.
2. Select **Add filter**. In the **Tags**, select **Environment**, then select **Training**. You should see only your two virtual networks displayed, since you tagged those resources with the **Environment** tag set to **Training**.
3. You can further filter these resources by additionally filtering on a **Department** tag with a value of **Finance** or **Marketing**.

## Use tags for organization

The above example is just one example of where you can use tags to organize your resources. With their flexibility, there are several ways you can use tags to your advantage.

You can use tags to group your billing data. For example, if you're running multiple VMs for different organizations, use the tags to group usage by cost center. You can also use tags to categorize costs by runtime environment, such as the billing usage for VMs running in the production environment. When exporting billing data or accessing it through billing APIs, tags are included in that data and can be used to further slice your data from a cost perspective.

You can retrieve all the resources in your subscription with a specific tag name or value. Tags enable you to retrieve related resources from different resource groups. This approach is helpful when you need to organize resources for billing or management.

Tagging resources can also help in monitoring to track down impacted resources. Monitoring systems could include tag data with alerts, giving you the ability to know exactly who is impacted. In our example above, you applied the **Department** tag with a value of **Finance** to the **msftlearn-vnet1** resource. If an alarm was thrown on **msftlearn-vnet1** and the alarm included the tag, you'd know that the finance department may be impacted by the condition that triggered the alarm. This contextual information can be valuable if an issue occurs.

It's also common for tags to be used in automation. If you want to automate the shutdown and startup of virtual machines in development environments during off-hours to save costs, you can use tags to assist in this automation. Add a **shutdown:6PM** and **startup:7AM** tag to the virtual machines, then create an automation job

# that looks for these tags, and shuts them down or starts them up based on the tag value. There are several solutions in the Azure Automation Runbooks Gallery that use tags in a similar manner to accomplish this result.

# Essential Azure compute concepts

# Your research team has collected massive amounts of image data that might lead to a discovery on Mars. They need to perform computationally intense data processing but don't have the equipment to do the work. Let's see why Azure is a good choice to do the data analysis.

## What is Azure compute?

Azure compute is an on-demand computing service for running cloud-based applications. It provides computing resources like multi-core processors and supercomputers via virtual machines and containers. It also provides serverless computing to run apps without requiring infrastructure setup or configuration. The resources are available on-demand and can typically be created in minutes or even seconds. You pay only for the resources you use and only for as long as you're using them.

There are four common techniques for performing compute in Azure:

* Virtual machines
* Containers
* Azure App Service
* Serverless computing

## What are virtual machines?

**Virtual machines**, or VMs, are software emulations of physical computers. They include a virtual processor, memory, storage, and networking resources. They host an operating system (OS), and you're able to install and run software just like a physical computer. And by using a remote desktop client, you can use and control the virtual machine as if you were sitting in front of it.

## What are containers?

Containers are a virtualization environment for running applications. Just like virtual machines, containers run on top of a host operating system. But unlike VMs, containers don't include an operating system for the apps running inside the container. Instead, containers bundle the libraries and components needed to run the application and use the existing host OS running the container. For example, if five containers are running on a server with a specific Linux kernel, all five containers and the apps within them share that same Linux kernel.

## What is Azure App Service?

Azure App Service is a platform-as-a-service (PaaS) offering in Azure that is designed to host enterprise-grade web-oriented applications. You can meet rigorous performance, scalability, security, and compliance requirements while using a fully managed platform to perform infrastructure maintenance.

## What is Serverless Computing?

Serverless computing is a cloud-hosted execution environment that runs your code but completely abstracts the underlying hosting environment. You create an instance of the service, and you add your code; no infrastructure configuration or maintenance is required, or even allowed.

## Which computing strategy is right for me?

You don't need to take an "all or nothing" approach when choosing a cloud computing strategy. Virtual machines, containers, App Service, and serverless computing each provide benefits as well as tradeoffs against other options.

For example, although serverless computing removes the need for you to manage infrastructure, serverless computing expects work to be completed quickly; usually within seconds or less. Therefore, you might run your core application on a virtual machine or container but offload some of the data processing onto a serverless app.

Let's look at each option more closely to help you decide when to use each service.

# Explore Azure Virtual Machines

Azure Virtual Machines (VMs) let you create and use virtual machines in the cloud. They provide infrastructure as a service (IaaS) in the form of a virtualized server and can be used in many ways. Just like a physical computer, you can customize all of the software running on the VM. VMs are an ideal choice when you need:

* Total control over the operating system (OS)
* The ability to run custom software, or
* To use custom hosting configurations

An Azure VM gives you the flexibility of virtualization without having to buy and maintain the physical hardware that runs the VM. However, you still need to maintain the VM—that is, configure, update, and maintain the software that runs on the VM.

You can create and provision a VM in minutes when you select a pre-configured VM image. Selecting an image is one of the most important decisions you'll make when creating a VM. An image is a template used to create a VM. These templates already include an OS and often other software, like development tools or web hosting environments.

### Examples of when to use virtual machines

* During testing and development. VMs provide a quick and easy way to create different OS and application configurations. Test and development personnel can then easily delete the VMs when they no longer need them.
* When running applications in the cloud. The ability to run certain applications in the public cloud as opposed to creating a traditional infrastructure to run them can provide substantial economic benefits. For example, if an application needs to handle fluctuations in demand, being able to shut down VMs when you don't need them or quickly start them up to meet a suddenly increased demand means you pay only for the resources you use.
* When extending your datacenter to the cloud. An organization can extend the capabilities of its own on-premises network by creating a virtual network in Azure and adding VMs to that virtual network. Applications like SharePoint can then run on an Azure VM instead of running locally, making it easier or less expensive to deploy than in an on-premises environment.
* During disaster recovery. As with running certain types of applications in the cloud and extending an on-premises network to the cloud, you can get significant costs savings by using an IaaS-based approach to disaster recovery. If a primary datacenter fails, you can create VMs running on Azure to run your critical applications and then shut them down when the primary datacenter becomes operational again.

## Moving to the cloud with VMs

VMs are also an excellent choice when moving from a physical server to the cloud ("lift and shift"). You can create an image of the physical server and host it within a VM with little or no changes. Just like a physical on-premises server, you must maintain the VM. You update the installed OS and the software it runs.

## Scaling VMs in Azure

You can run single VMs for testing, development, or minor tasks; or you can group VMs together to provide high availability, scalability, and redundancy. Azure has several features such that, no matter what your uptime requirements are, Azure can meet them. These features include:

* Availability sets
* Virtual Machine Scale Sets
* Azure Batch

### What are availability sets?

An **availability set** is a logical grouping of two or more VMs that help keep your application available during planned or unplanned maintenance.

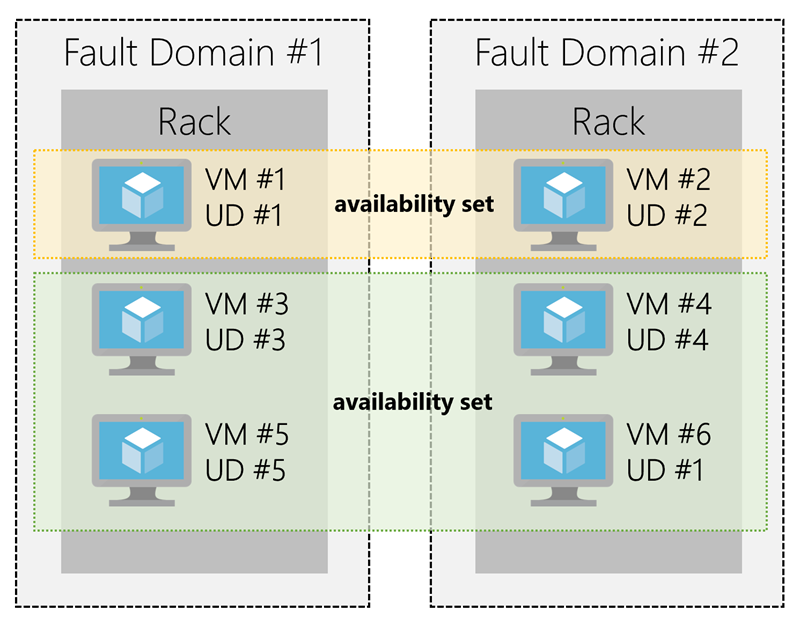
A planned maintenance event is when the underlying Azure fabric that hosts VMs is updated by Microsoft. A planned maintenance event is done to patch security vulnerabilities, improve performance, and add or update features. Most of the time these updates are done without any impact to the guest VMs. But sometimes VMs require a reboot to complete an update. When the VM is part of an availability set, the Azure fabric updates are sequenced so not all of the associated VMs are rebooted at the same time. VMs are put into different update domains. Update domains indicate groups of VMs and underlying physical hardware that can be rebooted at the same time. Update domains are a logical part of each data center and are implemented with software and logic.

Unplanned maintenance events involve a hardware failure in the data center, such as a server power outage or disk failure. VMs that are part of an availability set automatically switch to a working physical server so the VM continues to run. The group of virtual machines that share common hardware are in the same fault domain. A fault domain is essentially a rack of servers. It provides the physical separation of your workload across different power, cooling, and network hardware that support the physical servers in the data center server racks. In the event the hardware that supports a server rack becomes unavailable, only that rack of servers is affected by the outage.

With an availability set, you get:

* Up to three fault domains that each have a server rack with dedicated power and network resources
* Five logical update domains which then can be increased to a maximum of 20

Your VMs are then sequentially placed across the fault and update domains. The following diagram shows an example where you have six VMs in two availability sets distributed across the two fault domains and five update domains.



Two outlines surround fault domain 1 and fault domain 2. Fault domain 1 contains a rack with virtual machine 1 inside update domain 1, virtual machine 3 inside update domain 3, and virtual machine 5 inside update domain 5. Fault domain 2 contains a rack with virtual machine 2 inside update domain 2, virtual machine 4 inside update domain 4, and virtual machine 6 as part of update domain 1. Virtual machine 1 from fault domain 1 and virtual machine 2 from fault domain 2 are part of an availability set. Virtual machine 3 and 5 from fault domain 1 and virtual machine 4 and 6 from fault domain 2 are part of a separate availability set.

There's no cost for an availability set. You only pay for the VMs within the availability set. We highly recommend that you place each workload in an availability set to avoid having a single point of failure in your VM architecture.

### What are virtual machine scale sets?

Azure Virtual Machine Scale Sets let you create and manage a group of identical, load balanced VMs. Imagine you're running a website that enables scientists to upload astronomy images that need to be processed. If you duplicated the VM, you'd normally need to configure an additional service to route requests between multiple instances of the website. Virtual Machine Scale Sets could do that work for you.

Scale sets allow you to centrally manage, configure, and update a large number of VMs in minutes to provide highly available applications. The number of VM instances can automatically increase or decrease in response to demand or a defined schedule. With Virtual Machine Scale Sets, you can build large-scale services for areas such as compute, big data, and container workloads.

### What is Azure Batch?

Azure Batch enables large-scale job scheduling and compute management with the ability to scale to tens, hundreds, or thousands of VMs.

When you're ready to run a job, Batch does the following:

* Starts a pool of compute VMs for you
* Installs applications and staging data
* Runs jobs with as many tasks as you have
* Identifies failures
* Requeues work
* Scales down the pool as work completes

There may be situations in which you need raw computing power or supercomputer level compute power. Azure provides these capabilities.

# Explore Containers in Azure

If you wish to run multiple instances of an application on a single host machine, containers are an excellent choice. The container orchestrator can start, stop, and scale out application instances as needed.

A container is a modified runtime environment built on top of a host OS that executes your application. A container doesn't use virtualization, so it doesn't waste resources simulating virtual hardware with a redundant OS. This environment typically makes containers more lightweight than VMs. This design allows you to respond quickly to changes in demand or failure. Another benefit of containers is you can run multiple isolated applications on a single container host. Since containers are secured and isolated, you don't need separate servers for each app.

## VMs versus containers

## Containers in Azure

Azure supports Docker containers (a standardized container model), and there are several ways to manage containers in Azure.

* Azure Container Instances (ACI)
* Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS)

### Azure Container Instances

Azure Container Instances (ACI) offers the fastest and simplest way to run a container in Azure. You don't have to manage any virtual machines or configure any additional services. It is a PaaS offering that allows you to upload your containers and execute them directly with automatic elastic scale.

### Azure Kubernetes Service

The task of automating, managing, and interacting with a large number of containers is known as orchestration. Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS) is a complete orchestration service for containers with distributed architectures with multiple containers.

#### What is Kubernetes?

## Using containers in your solutions

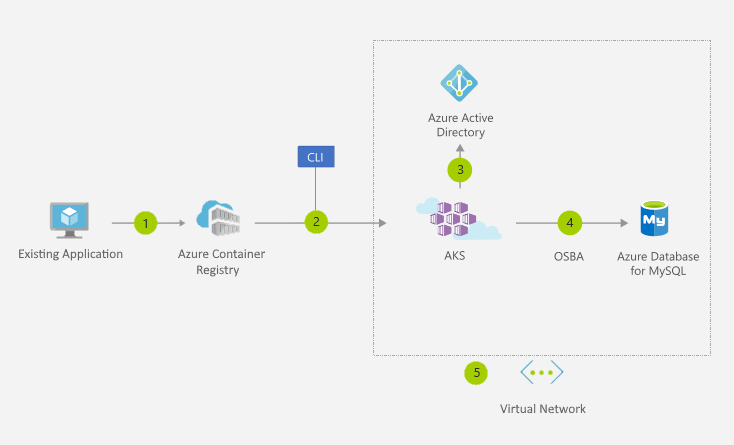
Containers are often used to create solutions using a microservice architecture. This architecture is where you break solutions into smaller, independent pieces. For example, you may split a website into a container hosting your front end, another hosting your back end, and a third for storage. This split allows you to separate portions of your app into logical sections that can be maintained, scaled, or updated independently.

### What is a microservice?

Imagine your website backend has reached capacity but the front end and storage aren't being stressed. You could scale the back end separately to improve performance, or you could decide to use a different storage service. Or you could even replace the storage container without affecting the rest of the application.

## Migrating apps to containers

You can move existing applications to containers and run them within AKS. You can control access via integration with Azure Active Directory (Azure AD) and access Service Level Agreement (SLA)–backed Azure services, such as Azure Database for MySQL for any data needs, via Open Service Broker for Azure (OSBA).



Step one is between an existing application and the Azure Container Registry. Step two is the CLI between Azure Container Registry and AKS. Step three is between AKS and Azure Active Directory. Step four is between AKS and Azure Database for MySQL, labeled OSBA. Step five is the dotted containing virtual network box around AKS, Azure Active Directory, and Azure Database for MySQL.

The preceding figure depicts this process as follows:

1. You convert an existing application to one or more containers and then publish one or more container images to the Azure Container Registry.
2. By using the Azure portal or the command line, you deploy the containers to an AKS cluster.
3. Azure AD controls access to AKS resources.
4. You access SLA-backed Azure services, such as Azure Database for MySQL, via OSBA.
5. Optionally, AKS is deployed with a virtual network.

# Explore Azure App Service

Azure App Service enables you to build and host web apps, background jobs, mobile backends, and RESTful APIs in the programming language of your choice without managing infrastructure. It offers automatic scaling and high availability. App Service supports both Windows and Linux, and enables automated deployments from GitHub, Azure DevOps, or any Git repo to support a continuous deployment model.

This platform as a service (PaaS) allows you to focus on the website and API logic while Azure handles the infrastructure to run and scale your web applications.

## App Service costs

You pay for the Azure compute resources your app uses while it processes requests based on the App Service Plan you choose. The App Service plan determines how much hardware is devoted to your host - for example, whether it's dedicated or shared hardware, and how much memory is reserved for it. There is even a free tier you can use to host small, low-traffic sites.

## Types of app services

With Azure App Service, you can host most common app service styles, including:

* Web Apps
* API Apps
* WebJobs
* Mobile Apps

Azure App Service handles most of the infrastructure decisions you deal with in hosting web-accessible apps: deployment and management are integrated into the platform, endpoints can be secured, sites can be scaled quickly to handle high traffic loads, and the built-in load balancing and traffic manager provide high availability. All of these app styles are hosted in the same infrastructure and share these benefits. This flexibility makes App Service the ideal choice to host web-oriented applications.

### Web apps

App Service includes full support for hosting web apps using ASP.NET, ASP.NET Core, Java, Ruby, Node.js, PHP, or Python. You can choose either Windows or Linux as the host operating system.

### API apps

Much like hosting a website, you can build REST-based Web APIs using your choice of language and framework. You get full Swagger support, and the ability to package and publish your API in the Azure Marketplace. The produced apps can be consumed from any HTTP(S)-based client.

### Web jobs

WebJobs allows you to run a program (.exe, Java, PHP, Python, or Node.js) or script (.cmd, .bat, PowerShell, or Bash) in the same context as a web app, API app, or mobile app. They can be scheduled, or run by a trigger. WebJobs are often used to run background tasks as part of your application logic.

### Mobile app back-ends

Use the Mobile Apps feature of Azure App Service to quickly build a back-end for iOS and Android apps. With just a few clicks in the Azure portal you can:

* Store mobile app data in a cloud-based SQL database
* Authenticate customers against common social providers such as MSA, Google, Twitter, and Facebook
* Send push notifications
* Execute custom back-end logic in C# or Node.js

On the mobile app side, there is SDK support for native iOS & Android, Xamarin, and React native apps.

# Explore Serverless computing in Azure

Serverless computing is the abstraction of servers, infrastructure, and OSs. With serverless computing, Azure takes care of managing the server infrastructure and allocation/deallocation of resources based on demand. Infrastructure isn't your responsibility. Scaling and performance are handled automatically, and you are billed only for the exact resources you use. There's no need to even reserve capacity.

Serverless computing encompasses three ideas: the abstraction of servers, an event-driven scale, and micro-billing:

1. **Abstraction of servers**: Serverless computing abstracts the servers you run on. You never explicitly reserve server instances; the platform manages that for you. Each function execution can run on a different compute instance, and this execution context is transparent to the code. With serverless architecture, you simply deploy your code, which then runs with high availability.
2. **Event-driven scale**: Serverless computing is an excellent fit for workloads that respond to incoming events. Events include triggers by timers (for example, if a function needs to run every day at 10:00 AM UTC), HTTP (API and webhook scenarios), queues (for example, with order processing), and much more. Instead of writing an entire application, the developer authors a function, which contains both code and metadata about its triggers and bindings. The platform automatically schedules the function to run and scales the number of compute instances based on the rate of incoming events. Triggers define how a function is invoked and bindings provide a declarative way to connect to services from within the code.
3. **Micro-billing**: Traditional computing has the notion of per-second billing, but often, that's not as useful as it seems. Even if a customer's website gets only one hit a day, they still pay for a full day's worth of availability. With serverless computing, they pay only for the time their code runs. If no active function executions occur, they're not charged. For example, if the code runs once a day for two minutes, they're charged for one execution and two minutes of computing time.

#### Serverless computing in Azure

Azure has two implementations of serverless compute:

* **Azure Functions**, which can execute code in almost any modern language.
* **Azure Logic Apps**, which are designed in a web-based designer and can execute logic triggered by Azure services without writing any code.

## Azure Functions

When you're concerned only about the code running your service, and not the underlying platform or infrastructure, Azure Functions are ideal. They're commonly used when you need to perform work in response to an event, often via a REST request, timer, or message from another Azure service and when that work can be completed quickly, within seconds or less.

Azure Functions scale automatically based on demand, so they're a solid choice when demand is variable. For example, you may be receiving messages from an IoT solution used to monitor a fleet of delivery vehicles. You'll likely have more data arriving during business hours.

Using a VM-based approach, you'd incur costs even when the VM is idle. With functions, Azure runs your code when it's triggered and automatically deallocates resources when the function is finished. In this model, you're only charged for the CPU time used while your function runs.

Furthermore, Azure Functions can be either stateless (the default), where they behave as if they're restarted every time they respond to an event, or stateful (called "Durable Functions"), where a context is passed through the function to track prior activity.

Functions are a key component of serverless computing, but they're also a general compute platform for running any type of code. If the needs of the developer's app change, you can deploy the project in an environment that isn't serverless, which provides the flexibility to manage scaling, run on virtual networks, and even completely isolate the functions.

## Azure Logic Apps

Azure Logic Apps are similar to Functions - both enable you to trigger logic based on an event. Where Functions execute code, Logic Apps execute workflows designed to automate business scenarios and built from predefined logic blocks. Every logic app workflow starts with a trigger, which fires when a specific event happens or when newly available data meets specific criteria. Many triggers include basic scheduling capabilities, so developers can specify how regularly their workloads will run. Each time the trigger fires, the Logic Apps engine creates a logic app instance that runs the actions in the workflow. These actions can also include data conversions and flow controls, such as conditional statements, switch statements, loops, and branching.

You create Logic App workflows using a visual designer on the Azure portal or in Visual Studio. The workflows are persisted as a JSON file with a known workflow schema.

Azure provides over 200 different connectors and processing blocks to interact with different services - including most popular enterprise apps. You can also build custom connectors and workflow steps if the service you need to interact with isn't covered. You then use the visual designer to link connectors and blocks together, passing data through the workflow to do custom processing - often all without writing any code.

As an example, let's say a ticket arrives in ZenDesk. You could:

1. Detect the intent of the message with cognitive services
2. Create an item in SharePoint to track the issue
3. If the customer isn't in your database, add them to your Dynamics 365 CRM system
4. Send a follow-up email to acknowledge their request

All of that could be designed in a visual designer making it easy to see the logic flow, which is ideal for a business analyst role.

## Functions vs. Logic Apps

Functions and Logic Apps can both create complex orchestrations. An orchestration is a collection of functions or steps, that are executed to accomplish a complex task. With Azure Functions, you write code to complete each step, with Logic Apps, you use a GUI to define the actions and how they relate to one another.

You can mix and match services when you build an orchestration, calling functions from logic apps and calling logic apps from functions. Here are some common differences between the two.

| **FUNCTIONS VS. LOGIC APPS** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **-** | **Functions** | **Logic Apps** |
| State | Normally stateless, but Durable Functions provide state | Stateful |
| Development | Code-first (imperative) | Designer-first (declarative) |
| Connectivity | About a dozen built-in binding types, write code for custom bindings | Large collection of connectors, Enterprise Integration Pack for B2B scenarios, build custom connectors |
| Actions | Each activity is an Azure function; write code for activity functions | Large collection of ready-made actions |
| Monitoring | Azure Application Insights | Azure portal, Log Analytics |
| Management | REST API, Visual Studio | Azure portal, REST API, PowerShell, Visual Studio |
| Execution context | Can run locally or in the cloud | Runs only in the cloud. |

### Virtualization

* Emulation of physical machines
* Different virtual hardware configuration per machine/app
* Different operating systems per machine/app
* Total separation of environments
  + file systems,
  + services,
  + ports,
  + middleware,
  + configuration

## Virtual Machines

* Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS)
* Total control over the operating system and the software
* Supports marketplace and custom images
* Best suited for
  + Custom software requiring custom system configuration
  + Lift-and-shift scenarios
* Can run any application/scenario
  + web apps & web services,
  + databases,
  + desktop applications,
  + jumpboxes,
  + gateways, etc.

## Virtual Machine Scale Sets

* Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS)
* Set of identical virtual machines
* Built-in auto scaling features
* Designed for manual and auto-scaled workloads like web services,\* batch processing, etc.

### Containers

* Use host’s operating system
* Emulate operating system (VMs emulate hardware)
* Lightweight (no O/S)
  + Development Effort
  + Maintenance
  + Compute & storage requirements
* Respond quicker to demand changes
* Designed for almost any scenario

## Azure Container Instances

* Simplest and fastest way to run a container in Azure
* Platform as a Service
* Serverless Containers
* Designed for
  + Small and simple web apps/services
  + Background jobs
  + Scheduled scripts

## Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS)

* Open-source container orchestration platform
* Platform as a Service
* Highly scalable and customizable
* Designed for high scale container deployments (anything really!)

## App Service

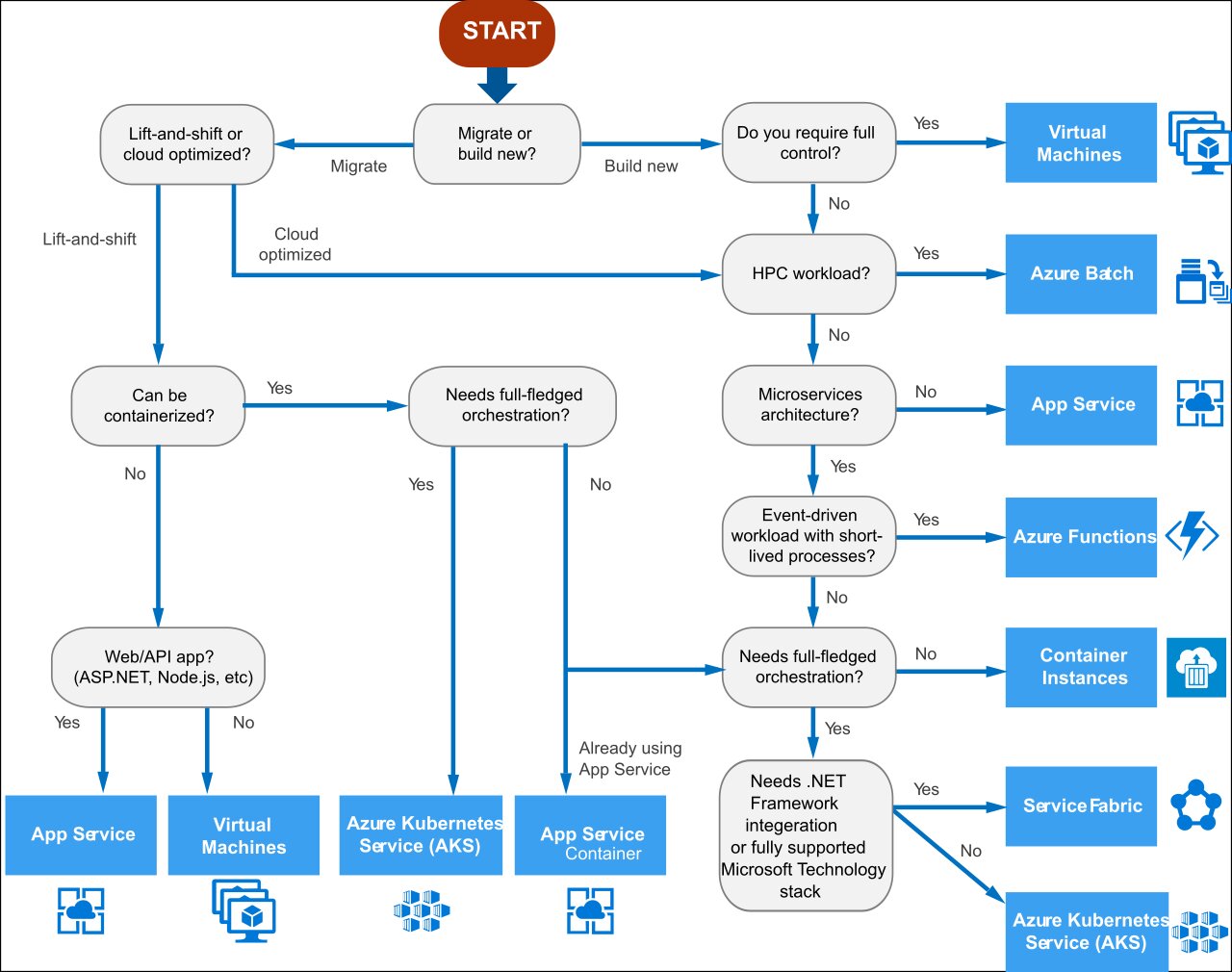
* Designed as enterprise grade web application service
* Platform as a Service
* Supports multiple programming languages and containers

## Azure Functions (Function Apps)

* Platform as a Service
* Serverless
* Two hosting/pricing models
  + Consumption-based plan
  + Dedicated plan
* Designed for micro/nano-services

# **Summary**

* Virtual Machines (IaaS) - Custom software, custom requirements, very specialized, high degree of control
* VM Scale Sets (IaaS) - Auto-scaled workloads for VMs
* Container Instances (PaaS) - Simple container hosting, easy to start
* Kubernetes Service (PaaS) - Highly scalable and customizable \* container hosting platform
* App Services (PaaS) - Web applications, a lot of enterprise web \* hosting features, easy to start
* Functions (PaaS) (Function as a Service) (Serverless) - micro/nano-services, excellent consumption-based pricing, easy to start

****

**Scale with Azure Load Balancer**

You now have your site up and running on Azure. But how can you help ensure your site is running 24/7?

For instance, what happens when you need to do weekly maintenance? Your service will still be unavailable during your maintenance window. And because your site reaches users all over the world, there's no good time to take down your systems for maintenance. You may also run into performance issues if too many users connect at the same time.

**What are availability and high availability?**

*Availability* refers to how long your service is up and running without interruption. *High availability*, or *highly available*, refers to a service that's up and running for a long period of time.

You know how frustrating it is when you can't access the information you need. Think of a social media or news site that you visit daily. Can you always access the site, or do you often see error messages like "503 Service Unavailable"?

You may have heard terms like "five nines availability." Five nines availability means that the service is guaranteed to be running 99.999 percent of the time. Although it's difficult to achieve 100 percent availability, many teams strive for at least five nines.

**What is resiliency?**

*Resiliency* refers to a system's ability to stay operational during abnormal conditions.

These conditions include:

* Natural disasters
* System maintenance, both planned and unplanned, including software updates and security patches.
* Spikes in traffic to your site
* Threats made by malicious parties, such as distributed denial of service (DDoS) attacks

Imagine your marketing team wants to have a flash sale to promote a new line of vitamin supplements. You might expect a huge spike in traffic during this time. This spike could overwhelm your processing system, causing it to slow down or halt, disappointing your users. You may have experienced this disappointment for yourself. Have you ever tried to access an online sale only to find the website wasn't responding?

**What is a load balancer?**

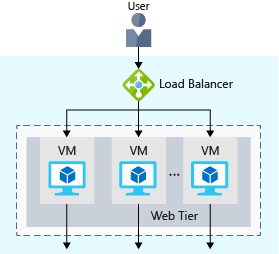
A *load balancer* distributes traffic evenly among each system in a pool. A load balancer can help you achieve both high availability and resiliency.

Say you start by adding additional VMs, each configured identically, to each tier. The idea is to have additional systems ready, in case one goes down, or is serving too many users at the same time.

The problem here is that each VM would have its own IP address. Plus, you don't have a way to distribute traffic in case one system goes down or is busy. How do you connect your VMs so that they appear to the user as one system?

The answer is to use a *load balancer* to distribute traffic. The load balancer becomes the entry point to the user. The user doesn't know (or need to know) which system the load balancer chooses to receive the request.

The following illustration shows the role of a load balancer.



The load balancer receives the user's request and directs the request to one of the VMs in the web tier. If a VM is unavailable or stops responding, the load balancer stops sending traffic to it. The load balancer then directs traffic to one of the responsive servers.

Load balancing enables you to run maintenance tasks without interrupting service. For example, you can stagger the maintenance window for each VM. During the maintenance window, the load balancer detects that the VM is unresponsive, and directs traffic to other VMs in the pool.

For your e-commerce site, the app and data tiers can also have a load balancer. It all depends on what your service requires.

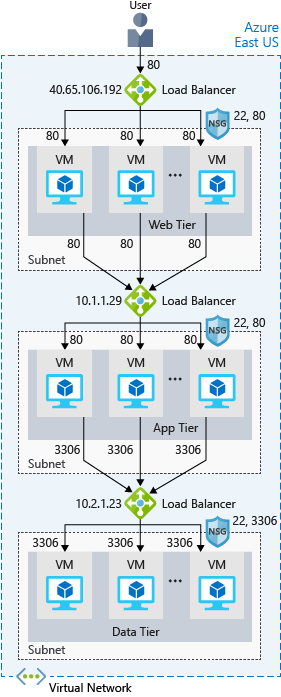
**What is Azure Load Balancer?**

Azure Load Balancer is a load balancer service that Microsoft provides that helps take care of the maintenance for you. Load Balancer supports inbound and outbound scenarios, provides low latency and high throughput, and scales up to millions of flows for all Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) applications. You can use Load Balancer with incoming internet traffic, internal traffic across Azure services, port forwarding for specific traffic, or outbound connectivity for VMs in your virtual network.

When you manually configure typical load balancer software on a virtual machine, there's a downside: you now have an additional system that you need to maintain. If your load balancer goes down or needs routine maintenance, you're back to your original problem.

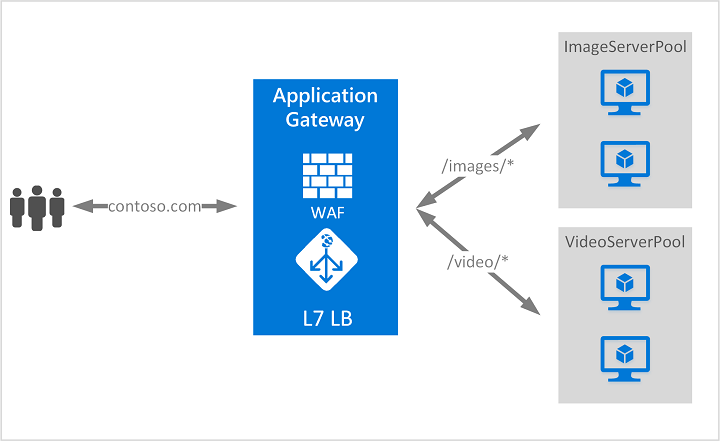
If instead, however, you use Azure Load Balancer, there's no infrastructure or software for you to maintain. You define the forwarding rules based on the source IP and port to a set of destination IP/ports.

The following illustration shows the role of Azure load balancers in a multi-tier architecture.



**Azure Application Gateway**

If all your traffic is HTTP, a potentially better option is to use Azure Application Gateway. Application Gateway is a load balancer designed for web applications. It uses Azure Load Balancer at the transport level (TCP) and applies sophisticated URL-based routing rules to support several advanced scenarios.



This type of routing is known as application layer (OSI layer 7) load balancing since it understands the structure of the HTTP message.

Here are some of the benefits of using Azure Application Gateway over a simple load balancer:

* **Cookie affinity**. Useful when you want to keep a user session on the same backend server.
* **SSL termination**. Application Gateway can manage your SSL certificates and pass unencrypted traffic to the backend servers to avoid encryption/decryption overhead. It also supports full end-to-end encryption for applications that require that.
* **Web application firewall**. Application gateway supports a sophisticated firewall (WAF) with detailed monitoring and logging to detect malicious attacks against your network infrastructure.
* **URL rule-based routes**. Application Gateway allows you to route traffic based on URL patterns, source IP address and port to destination IP address and port. This is helpful when setting up a *content delivery network*.
* **Rewrite HTTP headers**. You can add or remove information from the inbound and outbound HTTP headers of each request to enable important security scenarios, or scrub sensitive information such as server names.

**What is a Content Delivery Network?**

A content delivery network (CDN) is a distributed network of servers that can efficiently deliver web content to users. It is a way to get content to users in their local region to minimize latency. CDN can be hosted in Azure or any other location. You can cache content at strategically placed physical nodes across the world and provide better performance to end users. Typical usage scenarios include web applications containing multimedia content, a product launch event in a particular region, or any event where you expect a high-bandwidth requirement in a region.

**What about DNS?**

DNS, or Domain Name System, is a way to map user-friendly names to their IP addresses. You can think of DNS as the phonebook of the internet.

For example, your domain name, contoso.com, might map to the IP address of the load balancer at the web tier, 40.65.106.192.

You can bring your own DNS server or use Azure DNS, a hosting service for DNS domains that runs on Azure infrastructure.

The following illustration shows Azure DNS. When the user navigates to **contoso.com**, Azure DNS routes traffic to the load balancer.

**Summary**

With load balancing in place, your e-commerce site is now more highly available and resilient. When you perform maintenance or receive an uptick in traffic, your load balancer can distribute traffic to another available system.

Although you can configure your own load balancer on a VM, Azure Load Balancer reduces upkeep because there's no infrastructure or software to maintain.

DNS maps user-friendly names to their IP addresses, much like how a phonebook maps names of people or businesses to phone numbers. You can bring your own DNS server, or use Azure DNS.

**Reduce latency with Azure Traffic Manager**

* 7 minutes

Previously, you saw how **Azure Load Balancer** helps you achieve high availability and minimize downtime.

Although your e-commerce site is more highly available, it doesn't solve the issue of latency or create resiliency across geographic regions.

How can you make your site, which is located in the United States, load faster for users located in Europe or Asia?

**What is network latency?**

*Latency* refers to the time it takes for data to travel over the network. Latency is typically measured in milliseconds.

Compare latency to bandwidth. Bandwidth refers to the amount of data that can fit on the connection. Latency refers to the time it takes for that data to reach its destination.

Factors such as the type of connection you use and how your application is designed can affect latency. But perhaps the biggest factor is distance.

Think about your e-commerce site on Azure, which is in the East US region. It would typically take less time to transfer data to Atlanta (a distance of around 400 miles) than to transfer data to London (a distance of around 4,000 miles).

Your e-commerce site delivers standard HTML, CSS, JavaScript, and images. The network latency for many files can add up. How can you reduce latency for users located far away geographically?

**Scale out to different regions**

Recall that Azure provides data centers in regions across the globe.

Think about the cost of building a data center. Equipment costs aren't the only factor. You need to provide the power, cooling, and personnel to keep your systems running at each location. It might be prohibitively expensive to replicate your entire data center. But doing so with Azure can cost much less, because Azure already has the equipment and personnel in place.

One way to reduce latency is to provide exact copies of your service in more than one region. The following illustration shows an example of global deployment.

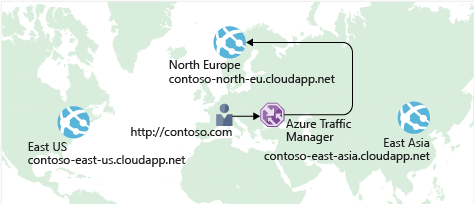


The diagram shows your e-commerce site running in three Azure regions: East US, North Europe, and East Asia. Notice the DNS name for each. How can you connect users to the service that's closest geographically, but under the contoso.com domain?

**Use Traffic Manager to route users to the closest endpoint**

One answer is **Azure Traffic Manager**. Traffic Manager uses the DNS server that's closest to the user to direct user traffic to a globally distributed endpoint.

The following illustration shows the role of the Traffic Manager.



Traffic Manager doesn't see the traffic that's passed between the client and server. Rather, it directs the client web browser to a preferred endpoint. Traffic Manager can route traffic in a few different ways, such as to the endpoint with the lowest latency.

Although not shown here, this setup could also include your on-premises deployment running in California. You can connect Traffic Manager to your own on-premises networks, enabling you to maintain your existing data center investments. Or you can move your application entirely to the cloud. The choice is yours.

**Compare Load Balancer to Traffic Manager**

Azure Load Balancer distributes traffic within the same region to make your services more highly available and resilient. Traffic Manager works at the DNS level, and directs the client to a preferred endpoint. This endpoint can be to the region that's closest to your user.

Load Balancer and Traffic Manager both help make your services more resilient, but in slightly different ways. When Load Balancer detects an unresponsive VM, it directs traffic to other VMs in the pool. Traffic Manager monitors the health of your endpoints. When Traffic Manager finds an unresponsive endpoint, it directs traffic to the next closest endpoint that is responsive.

**Summary**

Geographic distance is one of the biggest factors that contributes to latency. With Traffic Manager in place, you can host exact copies of your service in multiple geographic regions. That way, users in the United States, Europe, and Asia will all have a good experience using your e-commerce site.

Azure Networking

* Connect cloud and on-premises
* On-premise networking functionality

Azure Virtual Network

* Logically isolated networking components
* Segmented into one or more subnets
* Subnets are discrete sections
* Enable communication of resources with each-other, internet and on-premises
* Scoped to a single region
* VNet peering allow cross region communication
* Isolation, Segmentation, Communication, Filtering, Routing

Azure Load Balancer

* Even traffic distribution
* Supports both inbound and outbound scenarios
* High-availability scenarios
* Both TCP (transmission control protocol) and UDP (user datagram protocol) applications
* Internal and External traffic
* Port Forwarding
* High scale with up to millions of flows

VPN Gateway

* Specific type of virtual network gateway for on-premises to azure traffic over the public internet

Application Gateway

* Web traffic load balancer
* Web application firewall
* Redirection
* Session affinity
* URL Routing
* SSL termination

Content Delivery Network

* Define content
* Minimize latency
* POP (points of presence) with many locations

**Benefits of using Azure to store data**

To address the storage problem for your online learning portal, you're considering storing your data in the cloud. But you're concerned about security, backup, and disaster recovery. On top of those issues, you're worried about how difficult it could be to manage cloud-hosted data. So, here's what you need to know.

The Azure data storage options are cloud-based, secure, and scalable. Its features address the key challenges of cloud storage and provide you with a reliable and durable storage solution.

**Benefits of using Azure to store data**

Here are some of the important benefits of Azure data storage:

* **Automated backup and recovery**: mitigates the risk of losing your data if there is any unforeseen failure or interruption.
* **Replication across the globe**: copies your data to protect it against any planned or unplanned events, such as scheduled maintenance or hardware failures. You can choose to replicate your data at multiple locations across the globe.
* **Support for data analytics**: supports performing analytics on your data consumption.
* **Encryption capabilities**: data is encrypted to make it highly secure; you also have tight control over who can access the data.
* **Multiple data types**: Azure can store almost any type of data you need. It can handle video files, text files, and even large binary files like virtual hard disks. It also has many options for your relational and NoSQL data.
* **Data storage in virtual disks**: Azure also has the capability of storing up to 32 TB of data in its virtual disks. This capability is significant when you're storing heavy data such as videos and simulations.
* **Storage tiers**: storage tiers to prioritize access to data based on frequently used versus rarely used information.

**Types of data**

There are three primary types of data that Azure Storage is designed to hold.

1. **Structured data**. Structured data is data that adheres to a schema, so all of the data has the same fields or properties. Structured data can be stored in a database table with rows and columns. Structured data relies on keys to indicate how one row in a table relates to data in another row of another table. Structured data is also referred to as *relational data*, as the data's schema defines the table of data, the fields in the table, and the clear relationship between the two. Structured data is straightforward in that it's easy to enter, query, and analyze. All of the data follows the same format. Examples of structured data include sensor data or financial data.
2. **Semi-structured data**. Semi-structured data doesn't fit neatly into tables, rows, and columns. Instead, semi-structured data uses *tags* or *keys* that organize and provide a hierarchy for the data. Semi-structured data is also referred to as *non-relational* or *NoSQL* data.
3. **Unstructured data**. Unstructured data encompasses data that has no designated structure to it. This lack of structure also means that there are no restrictions on the kinds of data it can hold. For example, a blob can hold a PDF document, a JPG image, a JSON file, video content, etc. As such, unstructured data is becoming more prominent as businesses try to tap into new data sources.

## How Azure data storage can meet your business storage needs

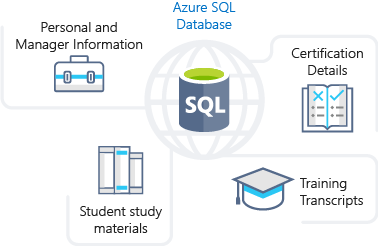
Azure provides several storage options that accommodate specific types of data storage needs.

### Azure SQL Database

Azure SQL Database is a relational database as a service (DaaS) based on the latest stable version of the Microsoft SQL Server database engine. SQL Database is a high-performance, reliable, fully managed and secure database. You can use it to build data-driven applications and websites in the programming language of your choice without needing to manage infrastructure.

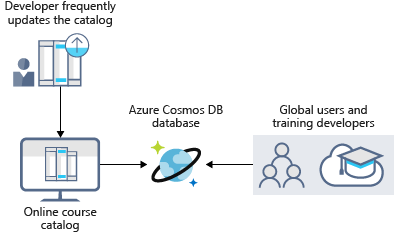
You can migrate your existing SQL Server databases with minimal downtime using the Azure Database Migration Service. The service uses the Microsoft Data Migration Assistant to generate assessment reports that provide recommendations to help guide you through required changes prior to performing a migration. Once you assess and perform any remediation required, you're ready to begin the migration process. The Azure Database Migration Service performs all of the required steps. You just change the connection string in your apps.

The following illustration shows the types of data from the online learning portal scenario that would be stored in an Azure SQL database.



### Azure Cosmos DB

Azure Cosmos DB is a globally distributed database service. It supports schema-less data that lets you build highly responsive and **Always On** applications to support constantly changing data. You can use this feature to store data that is updated and maintained by users around the world. The following illustration shows a sample Azure Cosmos DB database that's used to store data that's accessed by people located across the globe.

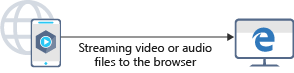


### Azure Blob storage

Azure Blob Storage is unstructured, meaning that there are no restrictions on the kinds of data it can hold. Blobs are highly scalable and apps work with blobs in much the same way as they would work with files on a disk, such as reading and writing data. Blob Storage can manage thousands of simultaneous uploads, massive amounts of video data, constantly growing log files, and can be reached from anywhere with an internet connection.

Blobs aren't limited to common file formats. A blob could contain gigabytes of binary data streamed from a scientific instrument, an encrypted message for another application, or data in a custom format for an app you're developing.

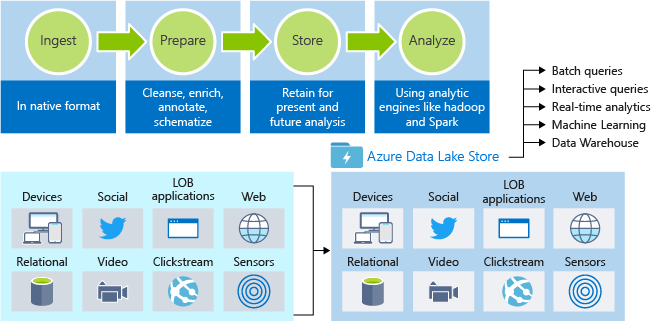
Azure Blob storage lets you stream large video or audio files directly to the user's browser from anywhere in the world. Blob storage is also used to store data for backup, disaster recovery, and archiving. It has the ability to store up to 8 TB of data for virtual machines. The following illustration shows an example usage of Azure blob storage.



### Azure Data Lake Storage

The Data Lake feature allows you to perform analytics on your data usage and prepare reports. Data Lake is a large repository that stores both structured and unstructured data.

**Azure Data Lake Storage** combines the scalability and cost benefits of object storage with the reliability and performance of the Big Data file system capabilities. The following illustration shows how Azure Data Lake stores all your business data and makes it available for analysis.

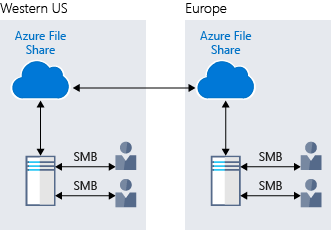


Data progresses through a flow diagram from ingest in its native format; prepare, where data is cleansed, enriched, annotated, and schematized; store, where data is retained for present and future analysis; then to analyze, where analytics engines like Hadoop and Spark are used on the data. Data is shown ingested to Azure Data Lake Store from devices, social media, LOB applications, web sites, relational databases, video, Clickstream, and sensors. From there, it can be accessed with batch queries, interactive queries, real-time analytics, machine learning, and data warehouse.

### Azure Files

Azure Files offers fully managed file shares in the cloud that are accessible via the industry standard Server Message Block (SMB) protocol. Azure file shares can be mounted concurrently by cloud or on-premises deployments of Windows, Linux, and macOS. Applications running in Azure virtual machines or cloud services can mount a file storage share to access file data, just as a desktop application would mount a typical SMB share. Any number of Azure virtual machines or roles can mount and access the file storage share simultaneously. Typical usage scenarios would be to share files anywhere in the world, diagnostic data, or application data sharing.

The following illustration shows Azure Files being used to share data between two geographical locations. Azure Files uses the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol that ensures the data is encrypted at rest and in transit.

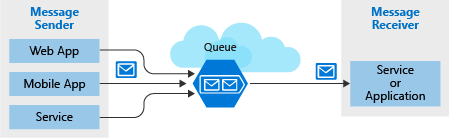


### Azure Queue

Azure Queue storage is a service for storing large numbers of messages that can be accessed from anywhere in the world.

Azure Queue Storage can be used to help build flexible applications and separate functions for better durability across large workloads. When application components are decoupled, they can scale independently. Queue storage provides asynchronous message queueing for communication between application components, whether they are running in the cloud, on the desktop, on-premises, or on mobile devices.

Typically, there are one or more sender components and one or more receiver components. Sender components add messages to the queue, while receiver components retrieve messages from the front of the queue for processing. The following illustration shows multiple sender applications adding messages to the Azure Queue and one receiver application retrieving the messages.



You can use queue storage to:

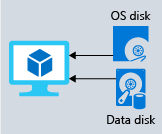
* Create a backlog of work and to pass messages between different Azure web servers.
* Distribute load among different web servers/infrastructure and to manage bursts of traffic.
* Build resilience against component failure when multiple users access your data at the same time.

### Disk Storage

Disk storage provides disks for virtual machines, applications, and other services to access and use as they need, similar to how they would in on-premises scenarios. Disk storage allows data to be persistently stored and accessed from an attached virtual hard disk. The disks can be managed or unmanaged by Azure, and therefore managed and configured by the user. Typical scenarios for using disk storage are if you want to lift and shift applications that read and write data to persistent disks, or if you are storing data that is not required to be accessed from outside the virtual machine to which the disk is attached.

Disks come in many different sizes and performance levels, from solid-state drives (SSDs) to traditional spinning hard disk drives (HDDs), with varying performance abilities.

When working with VMs, you can use standard SSD and HDD disks for less critical workloads, and premium SSD disks for mission-critical production applications. Azure Disks have consistently delivered enterprise-grade durability, with an industry-leading ZERO% annualized failure rate. The following illustration shows an Azure virtual machine using separate disks to store different data.



### Storage tiers

Azure offers three storage tiers for blob object storage:

1. **Hot storage tier**: optimized for storing data that is accessed frequently.
2. **Cool storage tier**: optimized for data that are infrequently accessed and stored for at least 30 days.
3. **Archive storage tier**: for data that are rarely accessed and stored for at least 180 days with flexible latency requirements.

### Encryption and replication

Azure provides security and high availability to your data through encryption and replication features.

#### Encryption for storage services

The following encryption types are available for your resources:

1. **Azure Storage Service Encryption (SSE)** for data at rest helps you secure your data to meet the organization's security and regulatory compliance. It encrypts the data before storing it and decrypts the data before returning it. The encryption and decryption are transparent to the user.
2. **Client-side encryption** is where the data is already encrypted by the client libraries. Azure stores the data in the encrypted state at rest, which is then decrypted during retrieval.

#### Replication for storage availability

A replication type is set up when you create a storage account. The replication feature ensures that your data is durable and always available. Azure provides regional and geographic replications to protect your data against natural disasters and other local disasters like fire or flooding.

**Comparison between Azure data storage and on-premises storage**

* 4 minutes

Now that you know about the benefits and features of Azure data storage, let's see how it differs from on-premises storage.

The term "on-premises" refers to the storage and maintenance of data on local hardware and servers. There are several factors to consider when comparing on-premises to Azure data storage.

**Cost effectiveness**

An on-premises storage solution requires dedicated hardware that needs to be purchased, installed, configured, and maintained. This requirement can be a significant up-front expense (or capital cost). Change in requirements can require investment in new hardware. Your hardware needs to be capable of handling peak demand, which means it may sit idle or be under-utilized in off-peak times.

Azure data storage provides a pay-as-you-go pricing model, which is often appealing to businesses as an operating expense instead of an upfront capital cost. It's also scalable, allowing you to scale up or scale out as demand dictates and scale back when demand is low. You are charged for data services only as you need them.

**Reliability**

On-premises storage requires data backup, load balancing, and disaster recovery strategies. These requirements can be challenging and expensive as they often each need dedicated servers requiring a significant investment in both hardware and IT resources.

Azure data storage provides data backup, load balancing, disaster recovery, and data replication as services to ensure data safety and high availability.

**Storage types**

Sometimes multiple different storage types are required for a solution, such as file and database storage. An on-premises approach often requires numerous servers and administrative tools for each storage type.

Azure data storage provides a variety of different storage options including distributed access and tiered storage. This variety makes it possible to integrate a combination of storage technologies providing the best storage choice for each part of your solution.

**Agility**

Requirements and technologies change. For an on-premises deployment, these changes may mean provisioning and deploying new servers and infrastructure pieces, which are a time consuming and expensive activity.

Azure data storage gives you the flexibility to create new services in minutes. This flexibility allows you to change storage back-ends quickly without needing a significant hardware investment.

**Compare on-premises storage to Azure data storage**

The following table describes the differences between on-premises storage and Azure data storage.

| **COMPARE ON-PREMISES STORAGE TO AZURE DATA STORAGE** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Needs** | **On-premises** | **Azure data storage** |
| Compliance and security | Dedicated servers required for privacy and security | Client-side encryption and encryption at rest |
| Store structured and unstructured data | Additional IT resources with dedicated servers required | Azure Data Lake and portal analyzes and manages all types of data |
| Replication and high availability | More resources, licensing, and servers required | Built-in replication and redundancy features available |
| Application sharing and access to shared resources | File sharing requires additional administration resources | File sharing options available without additional license |
| Relational data storage | Needs a database server with database admin role | Offers database-as-a-service options |
| Distributed storage and data access | Expensive storage, networking, and compute resources needed | Azure Cosmos DB provides distributed access |
| Messaging and load balancing | Hardware redundancy impacts budget and resources | Azure Queue provides effective load balancing |
| Tiered storage | Management of tiered storage needs technology and labor skill set | Azure offers automated tiered storage of data |

The Azure Storage platform is Microsoft's cloud storage solution for modern data storage scenarios. Core storage services offer a massively scalable object store for data objects, disk storage for Azure virtual machines (VMs), a file system service for the cloud, a messaging store for reliable messaging, and a NoSQL store. The services are:

* **Durable and highly available.** Redundancy ensures that your data is safe in the event of transient hardware failures. You can also opt to replicate data across datacenters or geographical regions for additional protection from local catastrophe or natural disaster. Data replicated in this way remains highly available in the event of an unexpected outage.
* **Secure.** All data written to an Azure storage account is encrypted by the service. Azure Storage provides you with fine-grained control over who has access to your data.
* **Scalable.** Azure Storage is designed to be massively scalable to meet the data storage and performance needs of today's applications.
* **Managed.** Azure handles hardware maintenance, updates, and critical issues for you.
* **Accessible.** Data in Azure Storage is accessible from anywhere in the world over HTTP or HTTPS. Microsoft provides client libraries for Azure Storage in a variety of languages, including .NET, Java, Node.js, Python, PHP, Ruby, Go, and others, as well as a mature REST API. Azure Storage supports scripting in Azure PowerShell or Azure CLI. And the Azure portal and Azure Storage Explorer offer easy visual solutions for working with your data.

**Core storage services**

The Azure Storage platform includes the following data services:

* [Azure Blobs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/blobs/storage-blobs-introduction): A massively scalable object store for text and binary data. Also includes support for big data analytics through Data Lake Storage Gen2.
* [Azure Files](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/files/storage-files-introduction): Managed file shares for cloud or on-premises deployments.
* [Azure Queues](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/queues/storage-queues-introduction): A messaging store for reliable messaging between application components.
* [Azure Tables](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/tables/table-storage-overview): A NoSQL store for schemaless storage of structured data.
* [Azure Disks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-machines/managed-disks-overview): Block-level storage volumes for Azure VMs.

Each service is accessed through a storage account. To get started, see [Create a storage account](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/common/storage-account-create).

**Example scenarios**

The following table compares Files, Blobs, Disks, Queues, and Tables, and shows example scenarios for each.

| **EXAMPLE SCENARIOS** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Feature** | **Description** | **When to use** |
| **Azure Files** | Offers fully managed cloud file shares that you can access from anywhere via the industry standard Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.  You can mount Azure file shares from cloud or on-premises deployments of Windows, Linux, and macOS. | You want to "lift and shift" an application to the cloud that already uses the native file system APIs to share data between it and other applications running in Azure.  You want to replace or supplement on-premises file servers or NAS devices.  You want to store development and debugging tools that need to be accessed from many virtual machines. |
| **Azure Blobs** | Allows unstructured data to be stored and accessed at a massive scale in block blobs.  Also supports [Azure Data Lake Storage Gen2](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/blobs/data-lake-storage-introduction) for enterprise big data analytics solutions. | You want your application to support streaming and random access scenarios.  You want to be able to access application data from anywhere.  You want to build an enterprise data lake on Azure and perform big data analytics. |
| **Azure Disks** | Allows data to be persistently stored and accessed from an attached virtual hard disk. | You want to "lift and shift" applications that use native file system APIs to read and write data to persistent disks.  You want to store data that is not required to be accessed from outside the virtual machine to which the disk is attached. |
| **Azure Queues** | Allows for asynchronous message queueing between application components. | You want to decouple application components and use asynchronous messaging to communicate between them.  For guidance around when to use Queue storage versus Service Bus queues, see [Storage queues and Service Bus queues - compared and contrasted](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-azure-and-service-bus-queues-compared-contrasted). |
| **Azure Tables** | Allow you to store structured NoSQL data in the cloud, providing a key/attribute store with a schemaless design. | You want to store flexible datasets like user data for web applications, address books, device information, or other types of metadata your service requires.  For guidance around when to use Table storage versus the Azure Cosmos DB Table API, see [Developing with Azure Cosmos DB Table API and Azure Table storage](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cosmos-db/table-support). |

**Blob storage**

Azure Blob storage is Microsoft's object storage solution for the cloud. Blob storage is optimized for storing massive amounts of unstructured data, such as text or binary data.

Blob storage is ideal for:

* Serving images or documents directly to a browser.
* Storing files for distributed access.
* Streaming video and audio.
* Storing data for backup and restore, disaster recovery, and archiving.
* Storing data for analysis by an on-premises or Azure-hosted service.

Objects in Blob storage can be accessed from anywhere in the world via HTTP or HTTPS. Users or client applications can access blobs via URLs, the [Azure Storage REST API](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/blob-service-rest-api), [Azure PowerShell](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/powershell/module/azure.storage), [Azure CLI](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/cli/azure/storage), or an Azure Storage client library. The storage client libraries are available for multiple languages, including [.NET](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/overview/azure/storage), [Java](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/java/api/overview/azure/storage), [Node.js](https://azure.github.io/azure-storage-node), [Python](https://azure-storage.readthedocs.io/), [PHP](https://azure.github.io/azure-storage-php/), and [Ruby](https://azure.github.io/azure-storage-ruby).

For more information about Blob storage, see [Introduction to Blob storage](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/blobs/storage-blobs-introduction).

**Azure Files**

[Azure Files](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/files/storage-files-introduction) enables you to set up highly available network file shares that can be accessed by using the standard Server Message Block (SMB) protocol. That means that multiple VMs can share the same files with both read and write access. You can also read the files using the REST interface or the storage client libraries.

One thing that distinguishes Azure Files from files on a corporate file share is that you can access the files from anywhere in the world using a URL that points to the file and includes a shared access signature (SAS) token. You can generate SAS tokens; they allow specific access to a private asset for a specific amount of time.

File shares can be used for many common scenarios:

* Many on-premises applications use file shares. This feature makes it easier to migrate those applications that share data to Azure. If you mount the file share to the same drive letter that the on-premises application uses, the part of your application that accesses the file share should work with minimal, if any, changes.
* Configuration files can be stored on a file share and accessed from multiple VMs. Tools and utilities used by multiple developers in a group can be stored on a file share, ensuring that everybody can find them, and that they use the same version.
* Resource logs, metrics, and crash dumps are just three examples of data that can be written to a file share and processed or analyzed later.

For more information about Azure Files, see [Introduction to Azure Files](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/files/storage-files-introduction).

Some SMB features are not applicable to the cloud. For more information, see [Features not supported by the Azure File service](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/features-not-supported-by-the-azure-file-service).

**Queue storage**

The Azure Queue service is used to store and retrieve messages. Queue messages can be up to 64 KB in size, and a queue can contain millions of messages. Queues are generally used to store lists of messages to be processed asynchronously.

For example, say you want your customers to be able to upload pictures, and you want to create thumbnails for each picture. You could have your customer wait for you to create the thumbnails while uploading the pictures. An alternative would be to use a queue. When the customer finishes their upload, write a message to the queue. Then have an Azure Function retrieve the message from the queue and create the thumbnails. Each of the parts of this processing can be scaled separately, giving you more control when tuning it for your usage.

For more information about Azure Queues, see [Introduction to Queues](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/queues/storage-queues-introduction).

**Table storage**

Azure Table storage is now part of Azure Cosmos DB. To see Azure Table storage documentation, see the [Azure Table Storage Overview](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/tables/table-storage-overview). In addition to the existing Azure Table storage service, there is a new Azure Cosmos DB Table API offering that provides throughput-optimized tables, global distribution, and automatic secondary indexes. To learn more and try out the new premium experience, see [Azure Cosmos DB Table API](https://aka.ms/premiumtables).

For more information about Table storage, see [Overview of Azure Table storage](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/tables/table-storage-overview).

**Disk storage**

An Azure managed disk is a virtual hard disk (VHD). You can think of it like a physical disk in an on-premises server but, virtualized. Azure-managed disks are stored as page blobs, which are a random IO storage object in Azure. We call a managed disk 'managed' because it is an abstraction over page blobs, blob containers, and Azure storage accounts. With managed disks, all you have to do is provision the disk, and Azure takes care of the rest.

For more information about managed disks, see [Introduction to Azure managed disks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-machines/managed-disks-overview).

**Types of storage accounts**

Azure Storage offers several types of storage accounts. Each type supports different features and has its own pricing model. For more information about storage account types, see [Azure storage account overview](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/common/storage-account-overview).

**Secure access to storage accounts**

Every request to Azure Storage must be authorized. Azure Storage supports the following authorization methods:

* **Azure Active Directory (Azure AD) integration for blob and queue data.** Azure Storage supports authentication and authorization with Azure AD for the Blob and Queue services via Azure role-based access control (Azure RBAC). Authorizing requests with Azure AD is recommended for superior security and ease of use. For more information, see [Authorize access to Azure blobs and queues using Azure Active Directory](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/common/storage-auth-aad).
* **Azure AD authorization over SMB for Azure Files.** Azure Files supports identity-based authorization over SMB (Server Message Block) through either Azure Active Directory Domain Services (Azure AD DS) or on-premises Active Directory Domain Services (preview). Your domain-joined Windows VMs can access Azure file shares using Azure AD credentials. For more information, see [Overview of Azure Files identity-based authentication support for SMB access](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/files/storage-files-active-directory-overview) and [Planning for an Azure Files deployment](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/files/storage-files-planning#identity).
* **Authorization with Shared Key.** The Azure Storage Blob, Files, Queue, and Table services support authorization with Shared Key. A client using Shared Key authorization passes a header with every request that is signed using the storage account access key. For more information, see [Authorize with Shared Key](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/authorize-with-shared-key).
* **Authorization using shared access signatures (SAS).** A shared access signature (SAS) is a string containing a security token that can be appended to the URI for a storage resource. The security token encapsulates constraints such as permissions and the interval of access. For more information, see [Using Shared Access Signatures (SAS)](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/common/storage-sas-overview).
* **Anonymous access to containers and blobs.** A container and its blobs may be publicly available. When you specify that a container or blob is public, anyone can read it anonymously; no authentication is required. For more information, see [Manage anonymous read access to containers and blobs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/blobs/storage-manage-access-to-resources).

**Encryption**

There are two basic kinds of encryption available for the core storage services. For more information about security and encryption, see the [Azure Storage security guide](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/blobs/security-recommendations).

**Encryption at rest**

Azure Storage encryption protects and safeguards your data to meet your organizational security and compliance commitments. Azure Storage automatically encrypts all data prior to persisting to the storage account and decrypts it prior to retrieval. The encryption, decryption, and key management processes are transparent to users. Customers can also choose to manage their own keys using Azure Key Vault. For more information, see [Azure Storage encryption for data at rest](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/common/storage-service-encryption).

**Client-side encryption**

The Azure Storage client libraries provide methods for encrypting data from the client library before sending it across the wire and decrypting the response. Data encrypted via client-side encryption is also encrypted at rest by Azure Storage. For more information about client-side encryption, see [Client-side encryption with .NET for Azure Storage](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/common/storage-client-side-encryption).

**Redundancy**

To ensure that your data is durable, Azure Storage stores multiple copies of your data. When you set up your storage account, you select a redundancy option. For more information, see [Azure Storage redundancy](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/common/storage-redundancy?toc=/azure/storage/blobs/toc.json).

**Transfer data to and from Azure Storage**

You have several options for moving data into or out of Azure Storage. Which option you choose depends on the size of your dataset and your network bandwidth. For more information, see [Choose an Azure solution for data transfer](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/storage/common/storage-choose-data-transfer-solution).

**Pricing**

When making decisions about how your data is stored and accessed, you should also consider the costs involved. For more information, see [Azure Storage pricing](https://azure.microsoft.com/pricing/details/storage/).

**Storage APIs, libraries, and tools**

You can access resources in a storage account by any language that can make HTTP/HTTPS requests. Additionally, the core Azure Storage services offer programming libraries for several popular languages. These libraries simplify many aspects of working with Azure Storage by handling details such as synchronous and asynchronous invocation, batching of operations, exception management, automatic retries, operational behavior, and so forth. Libraries are currently available for the following languages and platforms, with others in the pipeline:

Storage Account

* Group of services which include
  + blob storage,
  + queue storage,
  + table storage, and
  + file storage
* Used to store
  + files,
  + messages, and
  + semi-structured data
* Highly scalable (up to petabytes of data)
* Highly durable (99.999999999% - 11 nines, up to 16 nines)
* Cheapest per GB storage

Blob Storage

* BLOB – binary large object – file
* Designed for storage of files of any kind
* Three storage tiers
  + Hot – frequently accessed data
  + Cool – infrequently accessed data (lower availability, high durability)
  + Archive – rarely (if-ever) accessed data

Queue Storage

* Storage for small pieces of data (messages)
* Designed for scalable asynchronous processing

Table Storage

* Storage for semi-structured data (NoSQL)
  + No need for foreign joins, foreign keys, relationships or strict schema
  + Designed for fast access
* Many programming interfaces and SDKs

File Storage

* Storage for files accessed via shared drive protocols
* Designed to extend on-premise file shares or implement lift-and-shift scenarios

Disk Storage

* Disk emulation in the cloud
* Persistent storage for Virtual Machines
* Different
  + sizes,
  + types (SSD, HDD)
  + performance tiers
* Disk can be unmanaged or managed

# What is the commercial marketplace?

After meeting with your company’s executive team, you start to compile some information about the commercial marketplace to report back to the group during your next meeting. So far, you’ve learned that the commercial marketplace is a cloud-based, on-demand market that lets Microsoft partners to publish their solutions into Microsoft’s online product catalog.

## Built for customers

For your current and future customers, the commercial marketplace is a powerful tool to find, try, buy, and deploy best-in-class solutions that they can use to accelerate digital transformation and innovate in the cloud. For your customers that are already Microsoft customers, purchasing solutions from the commercial marketplace has an added benefit—they can include commercial marketplace purchases in their existing Microsoft purchase agreements and receive a consolidated invoice from Microsoft.

## Built for partners

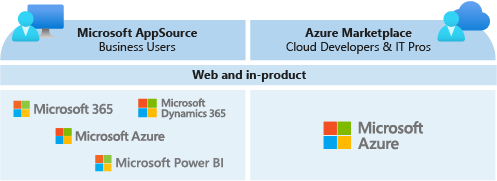
The commercial marketplace is free to join. You can use the commercial marketplace as a dynamic sales and marketing channel to access new markets, customer segments, and Microsoft cloud users with your software and services. You can also leverage it as a means to find best-in-class solutions you can deploy for use within your own cloud infrastructure to build your own solutions.

## Multiple access points

When you list your company’s solutions in the commercial marketplace, customers will be able to find them in two online stores, through the Microsoft network of resellers, and through in-product experiences in products like Microsoft 365, Dynamics 365, the Power Platform, and Azure.

The commercial marketplace has two online stores, **Microsoft AppSource** and **Azure Marketplace**, which are designed to serve different buyer roles within your customers’ organizations.

Between the two online stores and the in-product experiences, the commercial marketplace draws millions of active users per month, with each unique user representing a potential customer for your company. Because Microsoft products and services are used widely by organizations around the world, these monthly users represent companies of all sizes in every industry.



# Commercial marketplace online stores

When Microsoft partners add their solutions to the commercial marketplace, one way that customers can find their products and services is by visiting the online stores. You go to the [commercial marketplace documentation](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/marketplace/overview) to learn more.

## Azure Marketplace

As you read the documentation, you learn that Azure Marketplace is the Microsoft online store for IT solutions. It contains technical software and services that are certified to run on Microsoft Azure.

Azure Marketplace has thousands of solutions that are made to extend directly into users’ Azure infrastructure. Products in this storefront include Azure building blocks, digital cloud services, finished software solutions, and consulting and managed services. Products and services are organized by category and easy to filter, making it easy for customers to find the right app or service.

Your customers can access the Azure Marketplace online store by visiting [https://azuremarketplace.microsoft.com](https://azuremarketplace.microsoft.com/).

Because Azure Marketplace is a part of Azure, they can also access these solutions through the Azure portal at [https://portal.azure.com](https://portal.azure.com/). Any time Azure users click “Create a resource” on the Azure portal homepage, they’re accessing solutions from Azure Marketplace.

Both the online store and the Azure portal experiences help customers quickly find, try, buy, and deploy solutions to Azure online in minutes.

In addition to the cloud products and services available through both the online store and the portal, the [Azure Marketplace online store](https://azuremarketplace.microsoft.com/) also lists consulting and managed services offered by Microsoft partners to help customers in myriad areas including analytics, DevOps, migration, and security.

## Microsoft AppSource

The Microsoft AppSource contains business software that extends directly into Azure, Dynamics 365, Microsoft 365, and the Power Platform. Microsoft AppSource also contains web applications, which are hosted on the cloud and accessed over the internet. Solutions are organized by category and industry and are easy to filter, making it simple for customers to find the right app or service.

Your customers can access the Microsoft AppSource online store by visiting [https://appsource.microsoft.com](https://appsource.microsoft.com/).

AppSource apps are also available within Microsoft products by clicking “Get more apps” from the homepage in Dynamics 365, “Get apps” in Power BI, “Apps” in Teams, and “Insert>Get Add-ins” in Microsoft 365 products (excluding Teams).

In addition to the cloud products that are available through the online store and in-product experiences, the [Microsoft AppSource](https://appsource.microsoft.com/) also lists consulting services provided by Microsoft partners. AppSource consulting services are organized by industry, service type, location, and Microsoft product type.

## Summary

Now that you have a better understanding of the online stores and the applications and services they contain, you're convinced that your future customers will be able to find your solutions when you choose to join the commercial marketplace. Now you turn your attention to learning more about the different ways you can list your products in Microsoft AppSource and Azure Marketplace.

# Go to market with Microsoft

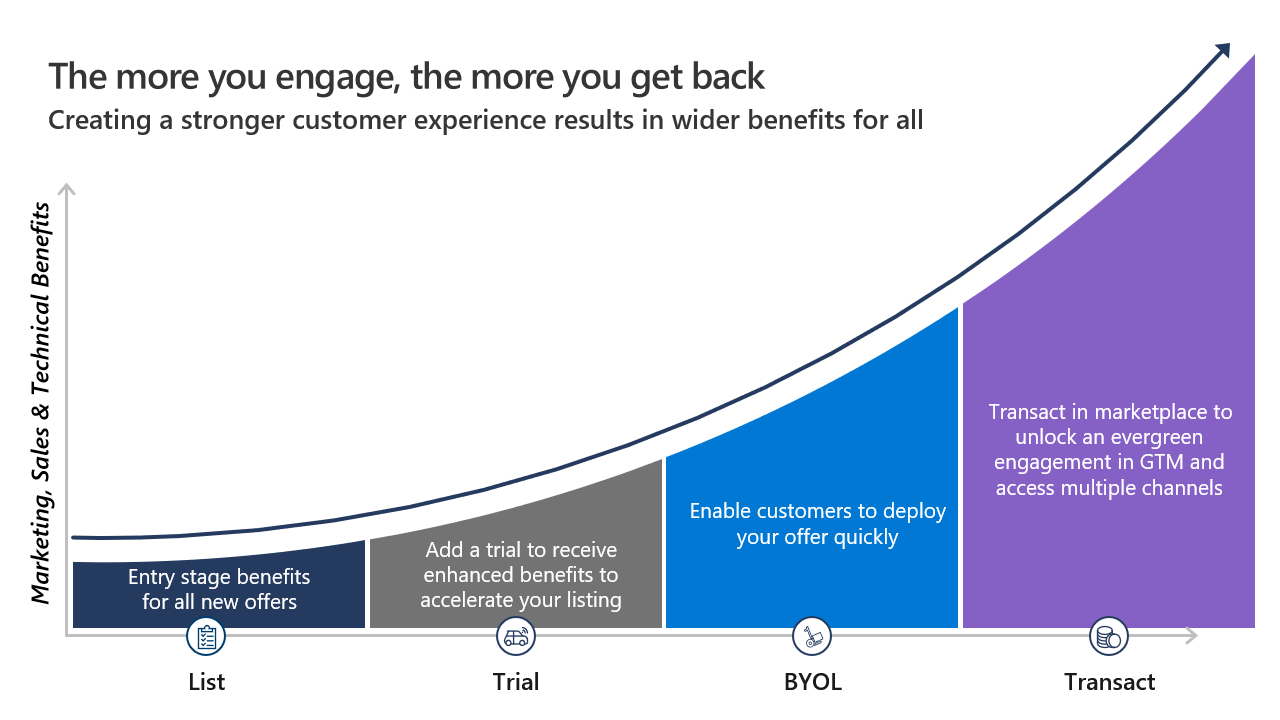
Now that you understand the different ways that customers can find, try, buy, and deploy your solutions through the Microsoft commercial marketplace, you start to read about Microsoft programs that will help accelerate your commercial marketplace offer’s growth. You find that your participation in the commercial marketplace unlocks go-to-market engagement and investment by Microsoft through a program called **Marketplace Rewards**.

## What is Marketplace Rewards?

When you publish your offer to the commercial marketplace, Microsoft provides you access to sales, technical and marketing benefits. As a publisher, one of the ways your benefits are differentiated is based on the listing option you choose.

If you’re engaging customers through a “Contact Me” listing, Microsoft’s Marketplace Rewards team will reach out to provide guidance on how to increase the awareness of your solution.

If you’re engaging customers by offering a **free trial** listing, enabling deployments through a **BYOL** offer, or making sales through a **transact** listing, Microsoft will support your growth with increasing demand generation and sales activities.



You can also earn higher tiers of Marketplace Rewards benefits when your commercial marketplace offer hits certain revenue milestones, which are reached when customers buy your solution through Microsoft AppSource, Azure Marketplace, our network of resellers, and the myriad in-product experiences. Hitting these revenue tiers requires that you have a **transact** offer in the commercial marketplace.

The Marketplace Rewards program is designed to support you at your business’ stage of growth, starting with awareness activities to help you get your first customers and shifting to more advanced sales and technical benefits as you sell more through Microsoft. These benefits are available to all partners with active commercial marketplace offers.

You can learn more about the benefits available through this commercial marketplace program by referencing the [Marketplace Rewards program slide deck](https://onedrive.live.com/view.aspx?resid=6C423AE231DA44BB!356&ithint=file%2cpptx&authkey=!ANmCupRE4iK9S2c).

**Azure Marketplace**

* Think of it like an “Azure Shop” where you purchase services and solutions for the Azure platform
* Each product is a template which contains one or multiple services
* Products are delivered by first and third-party vendors
* Solutions can leverage all service categories like IaaS, PaaS and SaaS

**Introduction to the Internet of Things**

For many businesses, the Internet of Things (IoT) is new territory opened up by the cloud. It's a technology that enables a mass of devices, with *some* computational power, to connect to a single cloud process with a mass of computational power.

The amount of data that IoT devices can capture creates a significant challenge for IT operations. Businesses expect IT administrators to help them understand what data to collect, and to help them realize the full potential of that data.

**Flatten the IoT learning curve**

A "thing" in the IoT world is often a sensor device. The device has some processing power but isn't a computer that can compare with a smartphone, laptop, PC, or workstation. The sensor device typically takes some measurements (including temperature, velocity, acceleration, and humidity) at a specified time interval. The device then transmits the values for processing to the cloud. These values are called *telemetry*.

In another example, an IoT system might capture and run predictive analytics on data from health monitors. Doctors can then make informed treatment plans for their patients. And it's all handled remotely.

In addition to transmitting data, IoT devices can get some instructions from the cloud. For example, the time interval might be changed, or additional sensors might be enabled or disabled. For a more complex device, one that both records telemetry and changes settings, the device can receive *desired* values from the cloud. The device will then adjust its settings to try to match the desired values it has received. These values might be temperature, humidity, velocity, and related telemetry.

In the world of IoT devices, *recorded* values and *desired* values are key concepts. In this module, we'll test only recorded values.

Imagine a scenario where there are many sensor devices. For example, devices record weather data, devices record the temperature of the contents of refrigeration units, and devices record the vibration in a series of conveyor belts. All the telemetry data is transmitted to a single source for processing. That source is an Azure IoT hub. And you've been assigned the job as administrator of that hub!

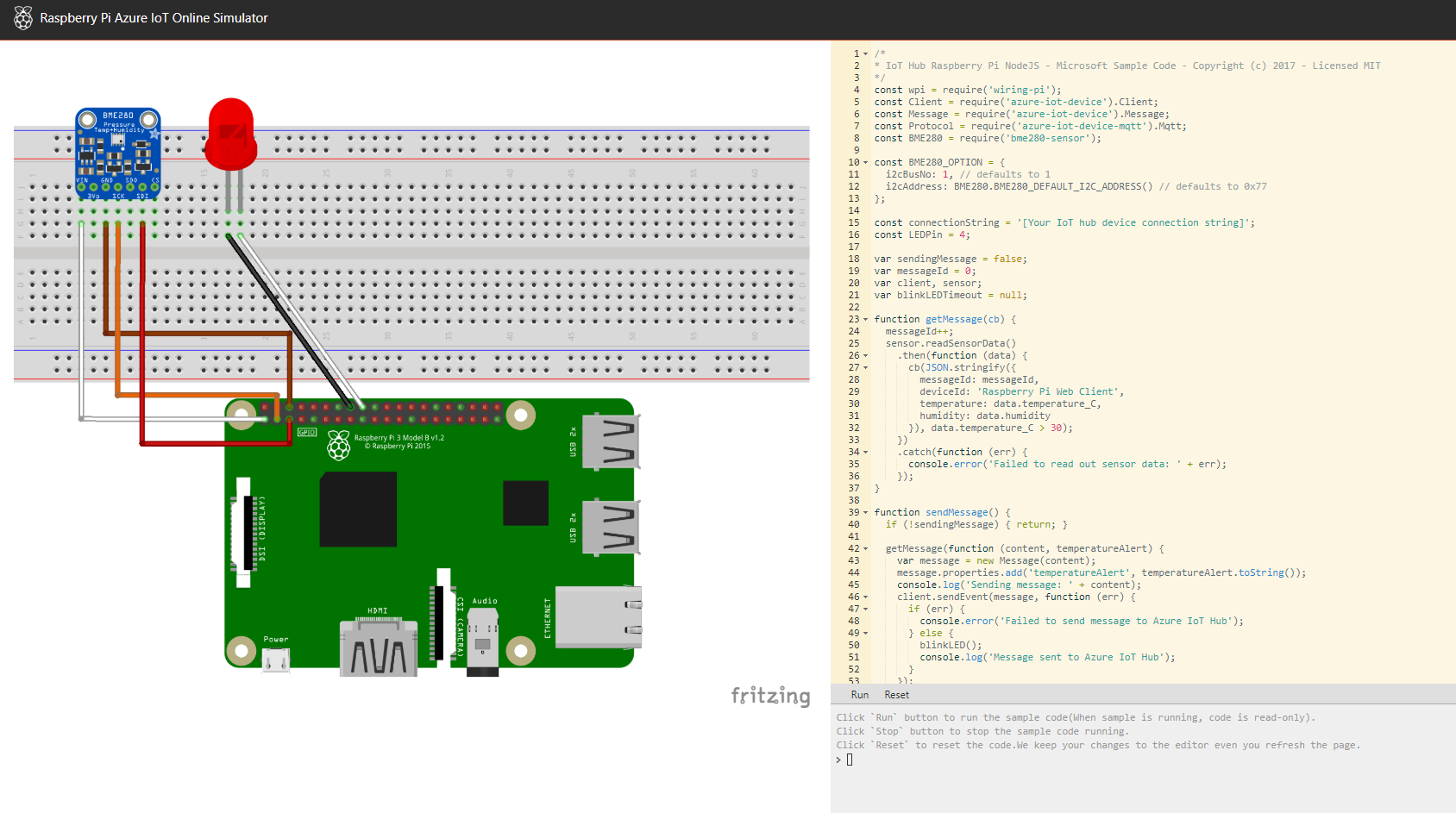
A popular device for getting experience with IoT is the Raspberry Pi device. This device is a small circuit board with some LED lights, some sensors (including for temperature), and the ability to communicate with an IoT hub. Some developers will want to physically connect the device and gain experience that way. A simpler alternative is to use Microsoft's Raspberry Pi simulator and do everything in software on your computer. This process is the approach we take in this module: you'll set up an IoT hub, define a single device, and then use the simulator to send telemetry to the hub.

# Introduction to the Raspberry Pi simulator

Raspberry Pi boards are popular IoT devices for education, for testing ideas, and even for building some worthwhile systems. Although the cost of a board isn't prohibitive, we can test the Raspberry Pi functionality before investing in actual hardware.

Microsoft has built an online [Raspberry Pi Azure IoT simulator](https://azure-samples.github.io/raspberry-pi-web-simulator). Users control the emulated hardware via code. The simulator shows a graphic of Raspberry Pi connected to a temperature, humidity, and pressure sensor, and a red LED. A breadboard allows circuits to be wired together. The displayed side panel enables users to enter Node.js code to control the LED, and to collect dummy data from the simulated sensor.

By default, the simulator operates a sample temperature-capture program, which is displayed via the command line. The same sample application can also be run on a real Pi device, because the simulator is designed to allow people to test code before transferring it to a real device.

[](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/learn/advocates/manage-iot-devices/media/iot-admin-raspberry-pi-simulator.png#lightbox)

The web simulator has three screen areas:

1. **Assembly area**. This area is where you can see your device status. By default, it shows a Pi device connecting with a BME280 sensor and an LED light.
2. **Coding area**. This area is an online code editor where you can make an app on Raspberry Pi by using Node.js. The default sample application helps collect sensor data from the BME280 sensor, and then sends it to your Azure IoT hub.
3. **Integrated console window**. This window is where you can see the output of your app. Within the console, there are three functions:
   * **Run** runs the sample code. When the sample is running, code is read-only.
   * **Stop** stops the sample code from running. You can select **Run** again to restart where you left off.
   * **Reset** resets the simulator to its starting state.

Now that you have an overview of the Raspberry Pi simulator, we'll explore the IoT hub in Azure where you'll create a new resource to capture data from the simulator.

# Set up your IoT hub, then register and run a device

This module requires a sandbox to complete. A [**sandbox**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/learn/support/faq?pivots=sandbox) gives you access to Azure resources. Your Azure subscription will not be charged. The sandbox may only be used to complete training on Microsoft Learn. Use for any other reason is prohibited, and may result in permanent loss of access to the sandbox.

Due to the impact of the global health pandemic, Azure resources are being prioritized towards health and safety organizations. You may experience some issues when you deploy resources used in the exercises. Please try again or choose a different region. For more information, see Azure blog post - [**Update #3: Business continuity with Azure**](https://azure.microsoft.com/blog/update-3-business-continuity-azure/).

Activate sandbox

In this unit, you'll interact with the online Raspberry Pi simulator that you learned about in the previous unit.

Although this exercise is being conducted in a simulated environment, the app running on the simulated device is similar to the code that would be running on a real device. In the IoT world, device simulation is a valuable step in building a production-grade solution.

# Administer your IoT hub

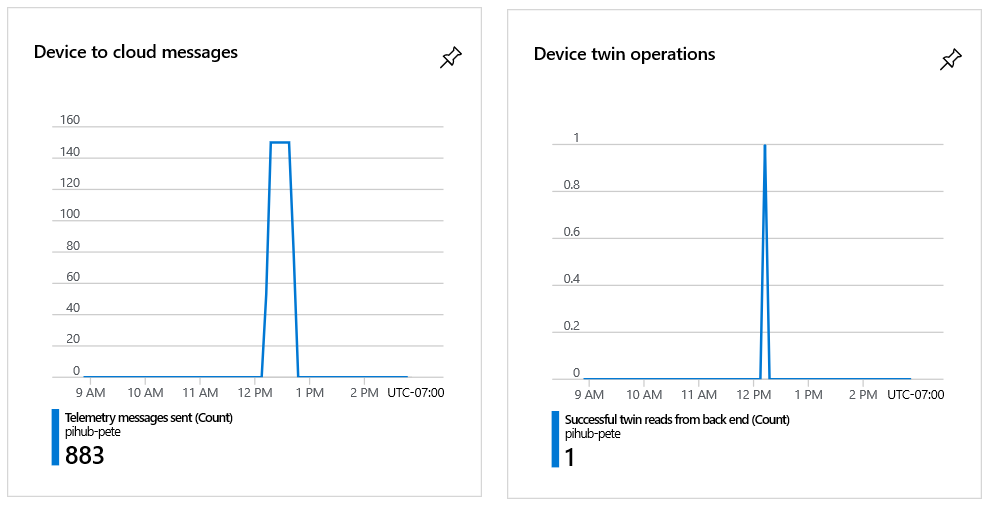
As an IoT admin, you need to get familiar with the left menu for your IoT hub. In this unit, we examine the most commonly used of these menu items. We don't examine them all, because some won't make sense until you have specific resources that will show up when you select these entries.

There's no need to try to learn everything at once. The purpose of this unit is to identify the menu items that are most valuable to you when you begin your adventure in IoT hub administration.

## Explore the IoT hub menu

### Select - Overview

The overview contains some useful data. If you scroll to the bottom of the page, you'll see two charts. By default, the **Telemetry messages sent** and **Successful twin reads from back end** metrics are displayed here. These charts are a good place to go to when you're verifying that the telemetry from a device is being received.

[](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/learn/advocates/manage-iot-devices/media/iot-admin-overview.png#lightbox)

The overview, however, isn't the most useful of the menu entries, as we'll see as we explore the menu. You can select **Activity log**, though you might not understand why the entries are there. Logs often contain too much information! Also, select **Diagnose and solve problems**. This page is a resource to go to if problems arise. There's no guarantee that it will have all the information you need, but it's a good place to start.

### Select - Settings

The important entry here is **Shared access policies**. You have already used this entry to extract the primary key for your hub. This entry is used to get the keys for all the policies that have been defined for the hub. You can create custom policies if needed.

The default list of policies is shown in the following image. Each policy has its own set of keys.

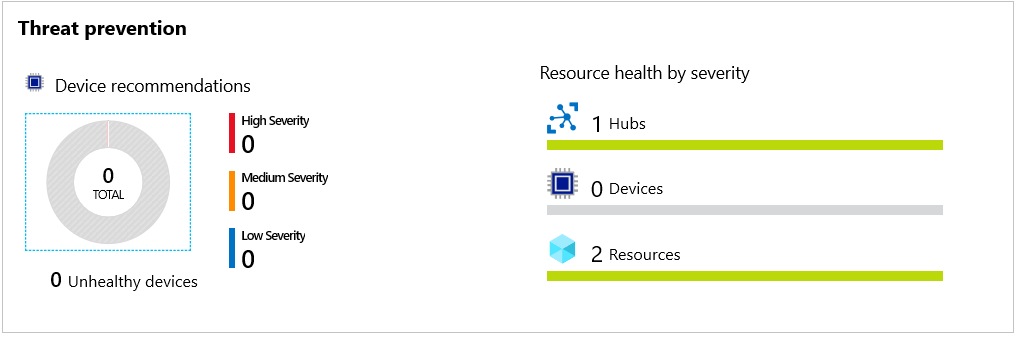
Another useful entry is **Properties**. Select this entry to bring up a range of strings that apply to your hub, including name, region, and subscription. This entry is a good point of reference. It's something to check if you get an unexpected error, for example. Also note that you can copy any of the strings by using the icon to the right.

### Select - Explorers

The **IoT devices** entry, which you've already used, is one of the most important entries on the left menu. When you start adding multiple devices to a hub, you'll see how helpful this entry is in administering remote devices. One of the main uses of this entry is to locate the device connection strings and keys. Device keys are distinct from the service keys for the hub itself.

### Select - Security

Select the **Overview** menu entry for this section. There will be nothing dramatic in this example, but you can see where to go for security recommendations when you have a production hub running.

[](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/learn/advocates/manage-iot-devices/media/iot-admin-security.png#lightbox)

### Select - Monitoring

You have already used **Metrics**, in the previous unit. Another useful entry is **Alerts**. Alerts fire when certain conditions, usually errors or warnings, are met.

To get detailed experience with metrics, and to set up some alerts, add the following module to your to-do list: [Manage your Azure IoT hub with alerts and metrics](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/learn/modules/manage-azure-iot-hub-with-metrics-alerts/).

# Summary

Azure IoT Hub provides the features, and an extensibility model, that enable developers to build robust remote device-management solutions. Devices range from constrained sensors and single-purpose microcontrollers to powerful gateways that route communications for groups of devices. Also, the use cases and requirements for IoT operators vary significantly across industries. Despite this variation, device management with IoT Hub provides the capabilities to cater to a diverse set of devices, users, and objectives.

## Clean up

The sandbox automatically cleans up your resources when you're finished with this module.

When you're working in your own subscription, it's a good idea at the end of a project to identify whether you still need the resources you created. Resources left running can cost you money. You can delete resources individually or delete the resource group to delete the entire set of resources.

What is Big Data?

**Big Data** is a field of technology that helps with the **extraction**, **processing** and **analysis** of information that is **too large or complex** to be dealt with by traditional software.

The three V’s rule

Big data typically has one of the following characteristics

* **Velocity** - how fast the data is coming in or how fast we are processing it
  + Batch
  + Periodic
  + Near Real Time
  + Real Time
* **Volume** - how much data we are processing
  + Megabytes
  + Gigabyte
  + Terabytes
  + Gigabytes
* **Variety** - how structured/complex the data is
  + Tables
  + Databases
  + Photo, Audio
  + Video, Social Media

# What is Azure Synapse Analytics (formerly SQL DW)?

Azure Synapse is an analytics service that brings together enterprise data warehousing and Big Data analytics. It gives you the freedom to query data on your terms, using either serverless on-demand or provisioned resources—at scale. Azure Synapse brings these two worlds together with a unified experience to ingest, prepare, manage, and serve data for immediate BI and machine learning needs.

Azure Synapse has four components:

* Synapse SQL: Complete T-SQL based analytics – Generally Available
  + SQL pool (pay per DWU provisioned)
  + SQL on-demand (pay per TB processed) (preview)
* Spark: Deeply integrated Apache Spark (preview)
* Synapse Pipelines: Hybrid data integration (preview)
* Studio: Unified user experience. (preview)

## Synapse SQL pool in Azure Synapse

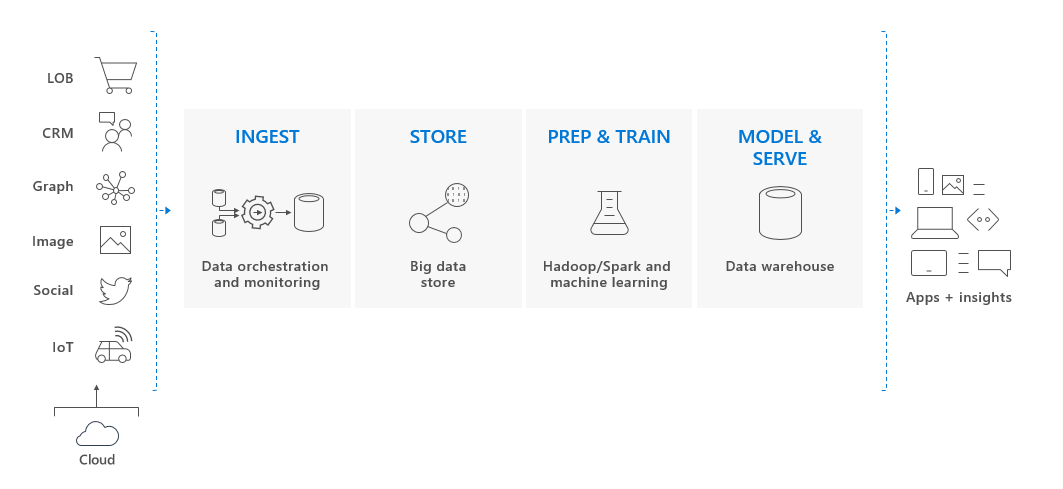
Synapse SQL pool refers to the enterprise data warehousing features that are generally available in Azure Synapse.

SQL pool represents a collection of analytic resources that are being provisioned when using Synapse SQL. The size of SQL pool is determined by Data Warehousing Units (DWU).

Import big data with simple [PolyBase](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/polybase/polybase-guide?toc=/azure/synapse-analytics/sql-data-warehouse/toc.json&bc=/azure/synapse-analytics/sql-data-warehouse/breadcrumb/toc.json&view=azure-sqldw-latest) T-SQL queries, and then use the power of the distributed query engine to run high-performance analytics. As you integrate and analyze the data, Synapse SQL will become the single version of truth your business can count on for faster and more robust insights.

## Key component of a big data solution

Data warehousing is a key component of a cloud-based, end-to-end big data solution.



In a cloud data solution, data is ingested into big data stores from a variety of sources. Once in a big data store, Hadoop, Spark, and machine learning algorithms prepare and train the data. When the data is ready for complex analysis, Synapse SQL pool uses PolyBase to query the big data stores. PolyBase uses standard T-SQL queries to bring the data into Synapse SQL pool tables.

Synapse SQL pool stores data in relational tables with columnar storage. This format significantly reduces the data storage costs, and improves query performance. Once data is stored, you can run analytics at massive scale. Compared to traditional database systems, analysis queries finish in seconds instead of minutes, or hours instead of days.

The analysis results can go to worldwide reporting databases or applications. Business analysts can then gain insights to make well-informed business decisions.

Azure Synapse Analytics

* Big data analytics platform (PaaS)
* Multiple components
  + Spark
  + Synapse SQL
    - SQL pools (dedicated – pay for provisioned performance)
    - SQL on-demand (ad-hoc – pay for TB processed)
  + Synapse Pipelines (Data Factory – ETL)
  + Studio (unified experience)

Azure HDInsight

* Flexible multi-purpose big data platform (PaaS)
* Multiple technologies supported (Hadoop, Spark, Kafka, HBase, Hive, Storm, Machine Learning)

Azure Databricks

* Big data collaboration platform (PaaS)
* Unified workspace for notebook, cluster, data, access management and collaboration
* Based on Apache Spark
* Integrates very well with common Azure data services

Azure Machine Learning studio = the web portal for data scientist developers in [Azure Machine Learning](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/overview-what-is-azure-ml). The studio combines no-code and code-first experiences for an inclusive data science platform.

## Author machine learning projects

The studio offers multiple authoring experiences depending on the type project and the level of user experience.

* **Notebooks**

Write and run your own code in managed [Jupyter Notebook servers](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-run-jupyter-notebooks) that are directly integrated in the studio.

* **Azure Machine Learning designer**

Use the designer to train and deploy machine learning models without writing any code. Drag and drop datasets and modules to create ML pipelines. Try out the [designer tutorial](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/tutorial-designer-automobile-price-train-score).

* **Automated machine learning UI**

Learn how to create [automated ML experiments](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/tutorial-first-experiment-automated-ml) with an easy-to-use interface.

* **Data labeling**

Use [Azure Machine Learning data labeling](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-create-labeling-projects) to efficiently coordinate data labeling projects.

## Manage assets and resources

Manage your machine learning assets directly in your browser. Assets are shared in the same workspace between the SDK and the studio for a seamless experience. Use the studio to manage:

* Models
* Datasets
* Datastores
* Compute resources
* Notebooks
* Experiments
* Run logs
* Pipelines
* Pipeline endpoints

Even if you're an experienced developer, the studio can simplify how you manage workspace resources.

Azure Event Hubs is a big data streaming platform and event ingestion service. It can receive and process millions of events per second. Data sent to an event hub can be transformed and stored by using any real-time analytics provider or batching/storage adapters.

The following scenarios are some of the scenarios where you can use Event Hubs:

* Anomaly detection (fraud/outliers)
* Application logging
* Analytics pipelines, such as clickstreams
* Live dashboarding
* Archiving data
* Transaction processing
* User telemetry processing
* Device telemetry streaming

## Why use Event Hubs?

Data is valuable only when there is an easy way to process and get timely insights from data sources. Event Hubs provides a distributed stream processing platform with low latency and seamless integration, with data and analytics services inside and outside Azure to build your complete big data pipeline.

Event Hubs represents the "front door" for an event pipeline, often called an event ingestor in solution architectures. An event ingestor is a component or service that sits between event publishers and event consumers to decouple the production of an event stream from the consumption of those events. Event Hubs provides a unified streaming platform with time retention buffer, decoupling event producers from event consumers.

The following sections describe key features of the Azure Event Hubs service:

## Fully managed PaaS

Event Hubs is a fully managed Platform-as-a-Service (PaaS) with little configuration or management overhead, so you focus on your business solutions. [Event Hubs for Apache Kafka ecosystems](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/event-hubs/event-hubs-for-kafka-ecosystem-overview) gives you the PaaS Kafka experience without having to manage, configure, or run your clusters.

## Support for real-time and batch processing

Ingest, buffer, store, and process your stream in real time to get actionable insights. Event Hubs uses a [partitioned consumer model](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/event-hubs/event-hubs-scalability#partitions), enabling multiple applications to process the stream concurrently and letting you control the speed of processing.

[Capture](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/event-hubs/event-hubs-capture-overview) your data in near-real time in an [Azure Blob storage](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/storage/blobs/) or [Azure Data Lake Storage](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/data-lake-store/) for long-term retention or micro-batch processing. You can achieve this behavior on the same stream you use for deriving real-time analytics. Setting up capture of event data is fast. There are no administrative costs to run it, and it scales automatically with Event Hubs [throughput units](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/event-hubs/event-hubs-scalability#throughput-units). Event Hubs enables you to focus on data processing rather than on data capture.

Azure Event Hubs also integrates with [Azure Functions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-functions/) for a serverless architecture.

## Scalable

With Event Hubs, you can start with data streams in megabytes, and grow to gigabytes or terabytes. The [Auto-inflate](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/event-hubs/event-hubs-auto-inflate) feature is one of the many options available to scale the number of throughput units to meet your usage needs.

## Rich ecosystem

[Event Hubs for Apache Kafka ecosystems](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/event-hubs/event-hubs-for-kafka-ecosystem-overview) enables [Apache Kafka (1.0 and later)](https://kafka.apache.org/) clients and applications to talk to Event Hubs. You do not need to set up, configure, and manage your own Kafka clusters.

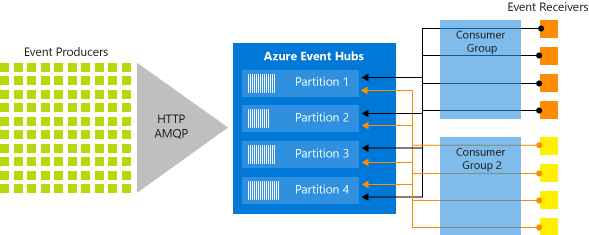
With a broad ecosystem available in various languages [.NET](https://github.com/Azure/azure-sdk-for-net/), [Java](https://github.com/Azure/azure-sdk-for-java/), [Python](https://github.com/Azure/azure-sdk-for-python/), [JavaScript](https://github.com/Azure/azure-sdk-for-js/), you can easily start processing your streams from Event Hubs. All supported client languages provide low-level integration. The ecosystem also provides you with seamless integration with Azure services like Azure Stream Analytics and Azure Functions and thus enables you to build serverless architectures.

## Key architecture components

Event Hubs contains the following [key components](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/event-hubs/event-hubs-features):

* **Event producers**: Any entity that sends data to an event hub. Event publishers can publish events using HTTPS or AMQP 1.0 or Apache Kafka (1.0 and above)
* **Partitions**: Each consumer only reads a specific subset, or partition, of the message stream.
* **Consumer groups**: A view (state, position, or offset) of an entire event hub. Consumer groups enable consuming applications to each have a separate view of the event stream. They read the stream independently at their own pace and with their own offsets.
* **Throughput units**: Pre-purchased units of capacity that control the throughput capacity of Event Hubs.
* **Event receivers**: Any entity that reads event data from an event hub. All Event Hubs consumers connect via the AMQP 1.0 session. The Event Hubs service delivers events through a session as they become available. All Kafka consumers connect via the Kafka protocol 1.0 and later.

The following figure shows the Event Hubs stream processing architecture:



## Event Hubs on Azure Stack Hub

Event Hubs on Azure Stack Hub allows you to realize hybrid cloud scenarios. Streaming and event-based solutions are supported, for both on-premises and Azure cloud processing. Whether your scenario is hybrid (connected), or disconnected, your solution can support processing of events/streams at large scale. Your scenario is only bound by the Event Hubs cluster size, which you can provision according to your needs.

The Event Hubs editions (on Azure Stack Hub and on Azure) offer a high degree of feature parity. This parity means SDKs, samples, PowerShell, CLI, and portals offer a similar experience, with few differences.

Event Hubs on Stack is free during public preview. For more information, see [Event Hubs on Azure Stack Hub overview](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure-stack/user/event-hubs-overview).

## What is machine learning?

Machine learning is a data science technique that allows computers to use existing data to forecast future behaviors, outcomes, and trends. By using machine learning, computers learn without being explicitly programmed.

Forecasts or predictions from machine learning can make apps and devices smarter. For example, when you shop online, machine learning helps recommend other products you might want based on what you've bought. Or when your credit card is swiped, machine learning compares the transaction to a database of transactions and helps detect fraud. And when your robot vacuum cleaner vacuums a room, machine learning helps it decide whether the job is done.

## Machine learning tools to fit each task

Azure Machine Learning provides all the tools developers and data scientists need for their machine learning workflows, including:

* The [Azure Machine Learning designer](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/tutorial-designer-automobile-price-train-score): drag-n-drop modules to build your experiments and then deploy pipelines.
* Jupyter notebooks: use our [example notebooks](https://github.com/Azure/MachineLearningNotebooks) or create your own notebooks to leverage our [SDK for Python](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/python/api/overview/azure/ml/intro?view=azure-ml-py) samples for your machine learning.
* R scripts or notebooks in which you use the [SDK for R](https://azure.github.io/azureml-sdk-for-r/reference/index.html) to write your own code, or use the R modules in the designer.
  + The [Many Models Solution Accelerator](https://aka.ms/many-models) (preview) builds on Azure Machine Learning and enables you to train, operate, and manage hundreds or even thousands of machine learning models.
* [Visual Studio Code extension](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/tutorial-setup-vscode-extension)
* [Machine learning CLI](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/reference-azure-machine-learning-cli)
* Open-source frameworks such as PyTorch, TensorFlow, and scikit-learn and many more
* [Reinforcement learning](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-use-reinforcement-learning) with Ray RLlib

You can even use [MLflow to track metrics and deploy models](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-use-mlflow) or Kubeflow to [build end-to-end workflow pipelines](https://www.kubeflow.org/docs/azure/).

## Build ML models in Python or R

Start training on your local machine using the Azure Machine Learning [Python SDK](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/python/api/overview/azure/ml/intro?view=azure-ml-py) or [R SDK](https://azure.github.io/azureml-sdk-for-r/reference/index.html). Then, you can scale out to the cloud.

With many available [compute targets](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-create-attach-compute-studio), like Azure Machine Learning Compute and [Azure Databricks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-databricks/what-is-azure-databricks), and with [advanced hyperparameter tuning services](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-tune-hyperparameters), you can build better models faster by using the power of the cloud.

You can also [automate model training and tuning](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/tutorial-auto-train-models) using the SDK.

## Build ML models in the studio

[Azure Machine Learning studio](https://studio.azureml.net/) is a web portal in Azure Machine Learning for low-code and no-code options for model training, deployment, and asset management. The studio integrates with the Azure Machine Learning SDK for a seamless experience. For more information, see [What is Azure Machine Learning studio](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/overview-what-is-machine-learning-studio).

* **Azure Machine Learning designer**

Use [the designer](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/concept-designer) to train and deploy machine learning models without writing any code. Try the [designer tutorial](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/tutorial-designer-automobile-price-train-score) to get started.

* **Track experiments**

Learn how to [track and visualize data science experiments](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/tutorial-first-experiment-automated-ml) in the studio.

## MLOps: Deploy & lifecycle management

When you have the right model, you can easily use it in a web service, on an IoT device, or from Power BI. For more information, see the article on [how to deploy and where](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-deploy-and-where).

Then you can manage your deployed models by using the [Azure Machine Learning SDK for Python](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/python/api/overview/azure/ml/?view=azure-ml-py&preserve-view=true), [Azure Machine Learning studio](https://ml.azure.com/), or the [machine learning CLI](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/reference-azure-machine-learning-cli).

These models can be consumed and return predictions in [real time](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-consume-web-service) or [asynchronously](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/how-to-use-parallel-run-step) on large quantities of data.

And with advanced [machine learning pipelines](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/concept-ml-pipelines), you can collaborate on each step from data preparation, model training and evaluation, through deployment. Pipelines allow you to:

* Automate the end-to-end machine learning process in the cloud
* Reuse components and only rerun steps when needed
* Use different compute resources in each step
* Run batch scoring tasks

If you want to use scripts to automate your machine learning workflow, the [machine learning CLI](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/machine-learning/reference-azure-machine-learning-cli) provides command-line tools that perform common tasks, such as submitting a training run or deploying a model.

## Integration with other services

Azure Machine Learning works with other services on the Azure platform, and also integrates with open source tools such as Git and MLFlow.

* Compute targets such as **Azure Kubernetes Service**, **Azure Container Instances**, **Azure Databricks**, **Azure Data Lake Analytics**, and **Azure HDInsight**.
* **Azure Event Grid**.
* **Azure Monitor**.
* Data stores such as **Azure Storage accounts**, **Azure Data Lake Storage**, **Azure SQL Database**, **Azure Database for PostgreSQL**, and **Azure Open Datasets**.
* **Azure Virtual Networks**.
* **Azure Pipelines**.
* **Git repository logs**.
* **MLFlow**.
* **Kubeflow**.

### Secure communications

Your Azure Storage account, compute targets, and other resources can be used securely inside a virtual network to train models and perform inference.

What is Serverless?

**Serverless computing** is cloud-hosted execution environment that allows customers to **run their applications** in the cloud while **completely abstracting underlying infrastructure**.

Azure Functions

* Serverless coding platform (Functions as a Service, FaaS)
* Designed for nano-service architectures and event-based applications
* Scales up and down very quickly
* Highly scalable
* Supports popular languages and frameworks (.NET & .NET Core, Java, Node.js, Python, PowerShell, etc.)

Azure Logic Apps

* Serverless enterprise integration service (PaaS)
* 200+ connectors for popular services
* Designed for orchestration of
  + business processes,
  + integration workflows for applications, data, systems and services
* No-code solution

Azure Event Grid

* Fully managed serverless event routing service
* Uses publish-subscribe model
* Designed for event-based and near-real time applications
* Supports dozen of built-in events from most common Azure services

What is DevOps?

**DevOps** is a set of practices that combine both development (**Dev**) and operations (**Ops**).

DevOps aims to **shorten the development life cycle** by providing **continuous integration** and **delivery** (CI/CD) capabilities while **ensuring high quality** of deliverables.

Azure DevOps

* **Collection of services** for building solutions using DevOps practices
* Services included
  + **Boards** – tracking work
  + **Pipelines** – building CI/CD workflows (build, test and deploy apps)
  + **Repos** – code collaboration and versioning with Git
  + **Test Plans** – manual and exploratory testing
  + **Artifacts** – manage project deliverables
* Extensible with **Marketplace** – over 1000 of available apps
* Evolved from **TFS** (Team Foundation Server), through **VSTS** (Visual Studio Team Services)

Azure DevTest Labs

* Service for creation of **sandbox environments** for developers/testers (PaaS)
* Quick setup of **self-managed virtual machines**
* **Preconfigured templates** for VMs
* Plenty of additional **artifacts** (tools, apps, custom actions)
* Lab **policies** (quotas, sizes, auto-shutdowns)
* **Share** and **automate** labs via custom images
* Premade plugins/API/tools for **CI/CD pipeline automation**

# Azure management options

You can configure and manage Azure using a broad range of tools and platforms. There are tools available for the command line, language-specific Software Development Kits (SDKs), developer tools, tools for migration, and many others.

Tools that are commonly used for day-to-day management and interaction include:

* **Azure portal** for interacting with Azure via a Graphical User Interface (GUI)
* **Azure PowerShell** and **Azure Command-Line Interface** (CLI) for command line and automation-based interactions with Azure
* **Azure Cloud Shell** for a web-based command-line interface
* **Azure mobile app** for monitoring and managing your resources from your mobile device

## Azure portal

The [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/) is a public website that you can access with any web browser. Once you sign in with your Azure account, you can create, manage, and monitor any available Azure services. You can identify a service you're looking for, get links for help on a topic, and deploy, manage, and delete resources. It also guides you through complex administrative tasks using wizards and tooltips.

The dashboard view provides high-level details about your Azure environment. You can customize the dashboard by moving and resizing tiles, and displaying services you're interested in.

The portal doesn't provide any way to automate repetitive tasks. For example, to set up multiple VMs, you would need to create them one at a time by completing the wizard for each VM. This process makes the portal approach time-consuming and error-prone for complex tasks.

## Azure PowerShell

Azure PowerShell is a module that you can install for Windows PowerShell or PowerShell Core, which is a cross-platform version of PowerShell that runs on Windows, Linux, or macOS. Azure PowerShell enables you to connect to your Azure subscription and manage resources. Windows PowerShell and PowerShell Core provide services such as the shell window and command parsing. Azure PowerShell then adds the Azure-specific commands.

For example, Azure PowerShell provides the New-AzVM command that creates a virtual machine for you inside your Azure subscription. To use it, you would launch PowerShell, install the Azure PowerShell module, sign in to your Azure account using the command Connect-AzAccount, and then issue a command such as:

PowerShellCopy

New-AzVM `

-ResourceGroupName "MyResourceGroup" `

-Name "TestVm" `

-Image "UbuntuLTS" `

...

Creating administration scripts and using automation tools is a powerful way to optimize your workflow. You can automate repetitive tasks. Once a script is verified, it runs consistently, which can reduce errors. Another scripting environment is the Azure CLI.

## Azure CLI

Azure CLI is a cross-platform command-line program that connects to Azure and executes administrative commands on Azure resources. Cross-platform means that it can be run on Windows, Linux, or macOS. For example, to create a VM, you would open a command prompt window, sign in to Azure using the command az login, create a resource group, then use a command such as:

Azure CLICopy

az vm create \

--resource-group MyResourceGroup \

--name TestVm \

--image UbuntuLTS \

--generate-ssh-keys \

...

## Azure Cloud Shell

[Azure Cloud Shell](https://shell.azure.com/) is an interactive, authenticated, browser-accessible shell for managing Azure resources. It provides the flexibility of choosing the shell experience that best suits the way you work, either Bash or PowerShell.

You can switch between the two shells, and both support the Azure CLI and Azure PowerShell module. Bash defaults to the Azure CLI (with the az command pre-installed), but you can switch to PowerShell Core within Linux by typing pwsh. The PowerShell environment has both CLI tools pre-installed. In addition to these administrative tools, the Cloud Shell has a suite of developer tools, text editors, and other tools available, including:

**Developer Tools :**

* .NET Core
* Python
* Java
* Node.js
* Go

**Editors :** code (Cloud Shell Editor), vim, nano, emacs

**Other tools :** git, maven, make,. npm

You can create, build, and deploy apps right from this browser-based environment. It's all persistent as well - you're prompted to create an Azure Storage Account when you access the Azure Cloud Shell. This storage area is used as your $HOME folder and any scripts or data you place here is kept across sessions. Each subscription has a unique storage account associated with it, so you can keep the data and tools you need specific to each account you manage.

We'll use the Cloud Shell in Microsoft Learn for many of the interactive exercises to try out Azure features.

## Azure mobile app

The [Microsoft Azure mobile app](https://aka.ms/azuremobileapp/) allows you to access, manage, and monitor all your Azure accounts and resources from your iOS or Android phone or tablet. Once installed, you can:

* Check the current status and important metrics of your services
* Stay informed with notifications and alerts about important health issues
* Quickly diagnose and fix issues anytime, anywhere
* Review the latest Azure alerts
* Start, stop, and restart virtual machines or web apps
* Connect to your virtual machines
* Manage permissions with role-based access control (RBAC)
* Use the Azure Cloud Shell to run saved scripts or perform ad hoc administrative tasks
* and more...

## Other options

There are also Azure SDKs for a range of languages and frameworks, and REST APIs that you can use to manage and control Azure resources programmatically. For a full list of tools available, see the [Downloads](https://azure.microsoft.com/downloads/) page.

When starting with Azure, you'll most often use the Azure portal. Let's take a closer look at the portal approach.

# Navigate the portal

With an Azure account, we can sign into the **Azure portal**. The portal is a web-based administration site that lets you interact with all of your subscriptions and resources you have created. Almost everything you do with Azure can be done through this web interface.

## Azure portal layout

The Azure portal is the primary graphical user interface (GUI) for controlling Microsoft Azure. You can carry out the majority of management actions in the portal, and it is typically the best interface for carrying out single tasks or where you want to look at the configuration options in detail.

**Resource panel**

In the left-hand sidebar of the portal is the resource panel, which lists the main resource types. Note that Azure has more resource types than just those shown. The resources listed are part of your favorites.

You can customize this with the specific resource types you tend to create or administer most often.

The remainder of the portal view is for the specific elements you are working with. The default (main) page is **Home** but you can change your default view to the customizable **Dashboard** from **Settings**. We'll cover settings later in this unit.

## Configuring settings in the Azure portal

The Azure portal displays several configuration options, mostly in the status bar at the top-right of the screen.

If you are viewing the Azure portal on a screen with reduced horizontal space, the following icons may be made available through an ellipsis (**...**) menu.

### Cloud Shell

If you select the **Cloud Shell** icon (>\_), you create a new Azure Cloud Shell session. Recall that Azure Cloud Shell is an interactive, browser-accessible shell for managing Azure resources. It provides the flexibility of choosing the shell experience that best suits the way you work. Linux users can opt for a Bash experience, while Windows users can opt for PowerShell. This browser-based terminal lets you control and administer all of your Azure resources in the current subscription through a command-line interface built right into the portal.

### Directory and subscription

Select the **Book and Filter** icon to show the **Directory + subscription** pane.

Azure allows you to have more than one subscription associated with one directory. On the **Directory + subscription** pane, you can change between subscriptions. Here, you can change your subscription or change to another directory.

### Notifications

Selecting the bell icon displays the **Notifications** pane. This pane lists the last actions that have been carried out, along with their status.

### Settings

Select the **gear** icon to change the Azure portal settings. These settings include:

* Inactivity sign out delay
* Default view when you first sign in
* Flyout or docked option for the portal menu
* Color and contrast themes
* Toast notifications (to a mobile device)
* Language and regional format

### Profile settings

If you select on your name in the top right-hand corner, a menu opens with a few options:

* Sign in with another account, or sign out entirely
* View your account profile, where you can change your password

Select the "..." button on the right-hand side for options to:

* Check your permissions
* View your bill
* Update your contact information

If you select "..." and then **View my bill**, Azure takes you to the **Cost Management + Billing - Invoices** page, which helps you analyze where Azure is generating costs.

Azure is a large product, and the Azure portal user interface (UI) reflects this scope. The sliding pane approach allows you to navigate back and forth through the various administrative tasks with ease. Let's experiment a bit with this UI so you get some practice.

### Azure Advisor

Finally, the Azure Advisor is a free service built into Azure that provides recommendations on high availability, security, performance, operational excellence, and cost. Advisor analyzes your deployed services and looks for ways to improve your environment across those areas. You can view recommendations in the portal or download them in PDF or CSV format.

With Azure Advisor, you can:

* Get proactive, actionable, and personalized best practices recommendations.
* Improve the performance, security, and high availability of your resources as you identify opportunities to reduce your overall Azure costs.
* Get recommendations with proposed actions inline.

You can access Azure Advisor by selecting **Advisor** from the navigation menu, or search for it in the **All Services** menu.

## View resources

1. Under Azure Marketplace, select **Compute** to show more compute options on the right side of the pane, such as Red Hat Enterprise, Reserved VM Instances, Web app for Containers, and so on.
2. To the right of **Featured**, select **See all**. The full list of available VM services now appears.
3. Select **Windows Server** under the **Operating Systems** section. On screens with limited horizontal space for the pane, you may have to scroll right and select the **See More** link to find the **Windows Server** option.
4. Select the drop-down list to see all of the Windows Server images available.
5. Select the **X** at the top right-hand corner to close the **Windows Server** window.
6. Select the **X** on the previous **Marketplace** window. You should now see the **New** pane again.

## Filter results

Another way to locate services is to refine the list with filters and search terms. On the **New** pane, you may have noticed the search box at the top. Searching is the quickest way to filter what services you see.

This search defaults to checking every Azure service category to get its results. Next, you'll filter after selecting a category.

1. Type virtual machine into the search box and select Enter.
2. Select **Compute**. You see a filtered list of Compute services related to virtual machine images.
3. Select any of the results that interest you to learn more about that service, including how to get started. Select the **X** in the corner to explore a different service. When you're done, move to the next step.
4. Select the **X** in the right-hand end of the search box. The **X** button will erase your search term but does not reset any of the drop-down filters you've set. You can either reset those filters manually, or close the **Marketplace** pane with the **X** icon in the upper right corner and reopen it. When you are finished trying out the search and filtering options, move on to the next step.
5. Select the **X** at the top right-hand corner to close the **Marketplace** pane. Now you will see the **New** pane once again.
6. Select the **X** at the top right-hand corner to close the **New** pane.

Many of the principles you have learned in this exercise apply throughout the Azure portal UI experience. In the next unit, you continue your journey in the Azure portal and configure additional settings in Azure.

The Azure portal has several features and services available; let's look at some of the more common areas you'll tend to use. First, take a moment to hover your mouse pointer over each of the icons in the top menu bar for a few seconds each. You should see a tooltip label pop-up for each one. This label is the name of the menu item. You will use these icons later.

## All services

1. On the top left-hand side of the Azure portal, select **Show portal menu**.
2. Select **All services**. Take a couple of minutes to look through the list to see how many services Azure offers.
3. You can search for services through the Search All box.
4. Select **Virtual machines**. If you don't see it, use the search box. The **Virtual Machines** pane appears. You haven't created any virtual machines so there are no results.
5. Select **+ Add** > **Virtual machine**. The **Create a virtual machine** pane appears.
6. Select the **X** in the top right-hand corner to close the **Create a virtual machine** pane.
7. Select the **X** in the top right-hand corner to close the **Virtual machines** pane.
8. Select on **Microsoft Azure** on the top left-hand side to get back to the home page.

## Azure Cloud Shell

The Azure Cloud Shell allows you to use a command-line interface (CLI) to execute commands in your Azure subscription. You can access it by selecting the (>\_) icon in the toolbar. You can also navigate to [https://shell.azure.com](https://shell.azure.com/) to launch a Cloud Shell in the browser independent of the portal.

The Azure Cloud Shell is available in the Sandbox environment, but the Sandbox version of the shell has reduced functionality. To use all of the Azure Cloud Shell features, use your own Azure subscription.

When you launch the shell, you see a Welcome window. You can choose either a **Bash** or **PowerShell** environment, depending on your personal preferences. You can also change the shell at any time through the language drop-down on the left side of the shell.

Finally, there are a variety of management and programming tools included in the created environment.

* Azure command-line tools (Azure CLI, AzCopy, etc.)
* Languages / Frameworks including .NET Core, Python, and Java
* Container management support for Docker, Kubernetes, etc.
* Code editors such as vim, emacs, code, and nano
* Build tools (make, maven, npm, etc.)
* Database query tools such as sqlcmd

## Directory and subscription

1. Select the **Directory + Subscription** (book and filter) icon to show the **Directory + subscription** pane.

This is where you can switch between multiple subscriptions or directories. You should see that you are in the Concierge Subscription of the Microsoft Learn Sandbox directory here. If you have other Azure directories tied to the same email address, those subscriptions will be available as well.

1. Select the **X** in the top right-hand corner to close the **Directory + subscription** pane.

## Notifications pane

1. On the icon bar menu bar, select the **Notifications** (bell) icon. This window lists any pending notifications.
2. If any notifications appear, hover your mouse over one of them. Select the **X** that appears in that notification to dismiss it.
3. Select **Dismiss all**. You should have no notifications showing.
4. Select the **X** in the top right-hand corner to close the **Notifications** pane.

## Settings

1. Select the **Settings** (cog) icon to open the **Portal settings** pane, showing the **General** settings by default.
2. Drop down the **Sign me out when inactive** setting, and select **After one hour**.
3. Under **Choose a theme**, select the different colored themes and observe the changes to the portal UI. Leave it set to the one you like the best.
4. Under **High contrast theme**, try the three different options.
5. Select **Enable pop-up notifications**. When this option is checked, notifications will appear as pop-up "toast"-style notifications. They will still show up in the Notifications (bell) icon as well.
6. Select the **Language & region** tab in the settings. Select **Language** and pick **Español**, and then select the **Apply** button. If a **Translate this page** dialog box appears, close the box. The whole portal is now in Spanish.
7. To revert back to English, select the **Settings** (cog) icon in the top menu bar and switch to the **Idioma y región** settings. Select **Idioma** and pick **English**. Select the **Aplicar** button. The portal returns to English.

## Profile settings

1. Select on your name in the top right-hand corner of the portal. Options include:
   * Sign in with another account, or sign out entirely
   * View your account profile, where you can change your password
   * Submit an idea
   * Check your permissions
   * View your bill
   * Update your contact information

Some of these items do not appear unless you select the "..." icon.

1. Select "..." then **View my bill** to navigate to the **Cost Management + Billing - Invoices** page, which helps you analyze where Azure is generating costs.
2. If you're using your own account and not sandbox, you can select a subscription from the drop-down list.
3. Select a billing period.
4. Note the service costs and check them against what you expect for your current subscription.
5. Select the **X** in the top right-hand corner to close the **Costs by service** pane.
6. Select the **X** in the top right-hand corner to close the **Cost Management + Billing - Invoices** page.
7. You should now be back on the home page.

Now that we've explored all the main areas of the Azure portal, let's look at one of the most useful features - Dashboards.

# Azure Portal dashboards

Let's look at how to create and modify dashboards using the Azure portal, and by editing the underlying JSON file directly. In this unit, you'll learn to navigate around the portal. And in the next unit, you will try out the things you've learned.

## What is a dashboard?

A dashboard is a customizable collection of UI tiles displayed in the Azure portal. You add, remove, and position tiles to create the exact view you want, and then save that view as a dashboard. Multiple dashboards are supported, and you can switch between them as needed. You can even share your dashboards with other team members.

Dashboards give you considerable flexibility regarding how you manage Azure. For example, you can create dashboards for specific roles within the organization, and then use role-based access control (RBAC) to control who can access that dashboard. Hence, your database administrator would have a dashboard that contains views of the SQL database service, whereas your Azure Active Directory administrator would have views of the users and groups within Azure AD. You can even customize the portal between your production and development environments within the portal - creating a specific dashboard for each environment you are managing.

Dashboards are stored as JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) files. This format means they can be uploaded and downloaded to other computers, or shared with members of the Azure directory. Azure stores dashboards within resource groups, just like virtual machines or storage accounts that you can manage within the portal.

Because dashboards are JSON files, you can also [customize them programmatically](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-portal/azure-portal-dashboards-create-programmatically), making them compelling administrative tools. Also, some tile types can be query-based, so they update automatically when the source data changes.

## Explore the default dashboard

The default dashboard is named "Dashboard". When you log into the portal for the first time and select **Dashboard** from the portal menu, you are presented with this dashboard containing five tiles.

These default web parts are

1. Dashboard controls
2. All resources tile
3. Quickstarts + tutorials tile
4. Service Health tile
5. Marketplace tile

## Creating and managing dashboards

At the top of the dashboard are the controls that enable you to create, upload, download, edit, and share a dashboard. You can also switch a dashboard to full screen, clone it, or delete it.

## Select dashboard

To the far left of the toolbar is the **Select Dashboard** drop-down control. Clicking this control enables you to select from dashboards that you have already defined for your account. This control makes it simple for you to define multiple dashboards for different purposes and then switch from one to another and back again, depending on what you are trying to do at the time.

Dashboards that you create will initially be private; that is, only you can see them. To make a dashboard available across your enterprise, you need to share it. We'll look at that option shortly.

## Create a new dashboard

To create a new dashboard, click **New dashboard**. The dashboard workspace appears, with no tiles present. You can then add, remove, and adjust tiles however you like. When you are finished customizing the dashboard, click **Done customizing** to save and switch to that dashboard.

## Upload and Download

The **Upload** and **Download** buttons enable you to download your current dashboard as a JSON file, customize it, and then distribute it and upload it or have someone else upload that file back to the Azure portal, thereby replacing their current dashboard.

If you click **Download**, the current dashboard downloads the JSON code as a file you can edit locally. You can then upload it back to Azure by clicking the **Upload** button. Downloading and uploading dashboards is discussed further below.

## Edit a dashboard using the portal

Although you can edit a dashboard by downloading the JSON file, changing values in the file, and uploading the file back to Azure, you may prefer a graphical approach to designing the user interface. To use the GUI to configure your current dashboard, you can switch to editing mode in several ways:

* Click the **Edit** (pencil icon) button.
* Right-click on the dashboard background area and select **Edit**.
* Right-click on a tile and a menu will appear with edit options.
* Hover over a tile on the dashboard - a ... menu will appear on the top/right corner with a **Customize** option.

The dashboard will switch to edit mode.

On the left-hand side appears the **Tile Gallery**, with several possible tiles. You can filter the Tile Gallery by category and resource type.

Adding tiles is as easy as selecting the tile from the list on the left and then dragging it to the work area. You can then move each tile about, resize it, or change the data that it displays.

**Tip**

One cool feature is that you can take elements on child panes and put them on your dashboard. Just hover over the item and look for the ... tile edit menu - this will have a "Pin to Dashboard" option which lets you quickly grab a tile from a service and put it onto the dashboard.

The work area in edit mode is divided into squares. Each tile must occupy at least one square, and tiles will snap to the nearest largest set of tile dividers. Any overlapping tiles are moved out of the way. When you make a tile smaller, the surrounding tiles will move back up against it.

### Change tile sizes

Some tiles have a set size, and you can edit their size only programmatically. However, you can edit tiles with a gray bottom right-hand corner by dragging the corner indicator.Alternatively, right-click into the contextual menu and specify the size you want.To create your dashboard, pull tiles from the Tile Gallery onto the workspace and then rearrange them.

### Change tile settings

Some tiles have editable settings. For example, with the clock tile, when you drag it onto the workspace, it opens the **Edit clock** tile. You can then set the time zone, which it displays, and also set whether it displays in 12- or 24-hour format.For multi-national or transcontinental companies, you can add several clocks, each in a different time zone.

### Accepting your edits

When you have arranged the tiles as you want them, either click **Done customizing** or right-click and then click **Done customizing**.

## Edit a dashboard by changing the JSON file

You can also edit a dashboard by changing the JSON file. This approach provides more options for changing settings, but you cannot see the changes until you upload the file back into Azure. The easiest starting point is to download the dashboard JSON as previously described and edit that file.

As an example, in the JSON shown above, to change the size of the tile you would edit the **colSpan** and **rowSpan** variables, then save the file and upload it back to Azure.

**Tip :** You can also distribute the dashboard JSON file to other users.

## Reset a dashboard

You can reset any dashboard to the default style. In edit mode, right-click the dashboard background and select **Reset to default state**. A dialog box will ask you to confirm that you want to reset that dashboard.

## Share or unshare a dashboard

When you define a new dashboard, it is private and visible only to your account. To make it visible to others, you need to share a dashboard. However, as with any other Azure resource, you need to specify a new resource group (or use an existing resource group) in which to store shared dashboards. If you do not have an existing resource group, Azure will create a dashboards resource group in whichever location you specify. If you have existing resource groups, you can specify that resource group to store the dashboards.

When you have shared the template, you will see a second **Sharing + access control** pane.

You can then click **Manage users** to specify the users who have access to that dashboard.

### Switching to a shared dashboard

To switch to a shared dashboard, you click on the list of dashboards, and then click **Browse all dashboards**.

You will now see the **All dashboards** pane, with the names of any shared dashboards displayed. Just click on a dashboard to apply it to the Azure portal.

## Display a dashboard as a full screen

If you want the largest dashboard real estate, click the **Full screen** button to display your current dashboard without any browser menus. If you have any tiles outside the boundaries of your screen display, slider bars will appear at the right and bottom of your screen.

When you have finished working in full-screen mode, press the ESC key or click **Exit Full Screen** next to the Dashboard name at the top of the screen.

## Clone a dashboard

Cloning a dashboard creates an instant copy called "Clone of <dashboard name>" and switches to that copy as the current dashboard. Cloning is also an easy way to create dashboards before sharing them. For example, if you have a dashboard that is almost as you want it, clone it, make the changes that you need, and then share it.

## Delete a dashboard

Deleting a dashboard removes it from your list of available dashboards. You are prompted to confirm that you want to delete the dashboard, but there is no facility to recover a dashboard that has been deleted.

Let's try out some of these options by creating a new dashboard.

Dashboards are a flexible tool for managing different aspects of Azure services through the Portal. They make it convenient to monitor the state of your services. Because they are shareable, they help ensure that everyone on your team sees the same data and stays aware of the state of your critical components. Let's create a new dashboard and add some tiles to it.

## Create a new dashboard

1. In the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/learn.docs.microsoft.com), from the top left-hand side, select **Show portal menu** > **Dashboard**.
2. Select the **New Dashboard**.
3. In the center pane, change **My Dashboard** to Customer Dashboard.

## Add and configure the Clock Tile

1. In the tile gallery, drag the clock onto the workspace. Place it on the top right of the available space.
2. On the **Edit clock** pane, change the Location to **Pacific Time (US & Canada)**.
3. Under **Time format**, select **24 hour**.
4. Select **Done**.
5. Repeat the preceding four steps, except select **Eastern Time (US & Canada)**. You should now have two clocks, one showing the time on the West Coast, the other on the East Coast.

## Resize a tile

1. Under **Tile Gallery**, drag an **All resources** tile and drop it onto the top left-hand side of the new dashboard workspace.
2. Hover over the new **All resources** tile and select the ellipsis icon (**...**); then select the **6x6** size.
3. Select the gray corner on the bottom right-hand side of the tile, and resize the tile to 3.5 squares vertically by six horizontally. When you finish resizing, the tile adjusts to 4x6.
4. In the Tile Gallery, drag the **Resource Groups** tile onto the workspace. Place it underneath the **All resources** tile.
5. In the Tile Gallery, select the **Metrics chart** tile, and drag it onto the workspace. Place it to the right of the **All resources** tile.
6. Continue to add the following tiles, rearranging them to fit:
   * Help + support
   * Quick Tasks
   * Marketplace
7. When you have added these tiles, select **Done customizing**. The **Customer Dashboard** dashboard should appear.

## Clone a dashboard

You now want to create a similar dashboard for some other customers.

1. Select the **Clone** button.
2. Rename the dashboard from **Clone of Customer Dashboard** to **Azure AD Admin Dashboard**.
3. On the **Resource Groups** tile, select the **Remove from dashboard** trash can icon to delete this tile.
4. From the Tile Gallery, add the following tiles:
   * Organization Identity
   * Users and Groups
   * User Activity Summary
5. Reposition the tiles as necessary, and then select **Done customizing**.

## Share a dashboard

You now want to make this dashboard available to other users. In the sandbox environment, you won't be able to publish a shared dashboard. But you can see how you'd share a dashboard by completing the following steps.

1. From the Azure AD Admin dashboard, select the **Share** button at the top. The **Sharing and access control** panel that appears.
2. To publish to a specific resource group, uncheck the **Publish to the 'dashboards' resource group** checkbox.
3. Select the resource group [sandbox resource group name] from the **Resource group** dropdown.
4. Select **Publish**.
5. At this point in the sandbox environment, you'll receive an error. That's ok.
6. Close the **Sharing + access control** pane.

## Edit a dashboard.json file

To show how you can download and edit a dashboard file, carry out the following steps:

1. Select **Download**.
2. Open a file explorer on your computer and navigate to where your web browser downloaded the dashboard, typically a **Downloads** folder.
3. Find the Customer Dashboard.json file and open it in a text editor.
4. In your editor, look for the text ClockPart.
5. On the first occurrence of ClockPart, change the previous **position** > **rowSpan** value to 1.
6. On the second occurrence of ClockPart, also change the previous **position** > **rowSpan** value to 1.
7. On the second occurrence of ClockPart, change the **position** > **y** value from 2 to 1.
8. Save the Customer Dashboard.json file and close your code editor.
9. On the Azure dashboard, select **Upload**.
10. In the **Open** dialog box, browse to the Downloads folder, and double-click Customer Dashboard.json.

The clocks have resized to one row high, and the bottom clock has moved up one row.

## Delete a dashboard

1. Ensure that the **Azure AD Admin** dashboard is selected.
2. Select the **Delete** button.
3. In the **Confirmation** message box, select the checkbox to confirm that this dashboard will no longer be visible, and then select **OK**.

## Reset a dashboard

1. Ensure that **Customer Dashboard** is selected.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. Right-click on the workspace, and select **Reset to default state**.
4. In the **Reset dashboard to default state** message box, select **Yes**.

The Customer Dashboard has reset to its default tiles.

1. Select **Done customizing**.
2. Select your name at the top right of the portal.
3. Select **Sign out**.
4. Close your browser.

Congratulations! You have now created and edited dashboards, shared them, altered them as **JSON** files, and finally, reset them to the default state. You should now be able to see what powerful tools dashboards can be and how you can use them to create efficient interfaces for differing roles within an organization.

# Access public and private preview features

Microsoft offers previews of Azure features for evaluation purposes. With Azure Preview Features, you can test beta and other pre-release features, products, services, software, and regions.

Some of the common areas you will see previews for include:

* New storage types
* New Azure services, such as Machine Learning enhancements
* New or enhanced integration with other platforms
* New APIs for services

Azure feature previews are available under certain terms and conditions that are specific to each particular Azure preview. Also, some previews are not covered by customer support.

Once a feature has been evaluated and tested successfully, it might be released to customers as part of Azure's default product set. This release is referred to as **General Availability** (GA).

### Feature preview categories

There are two types of previews available:

* **Private Preview**. An Azure feature marked "private preview" is available to specific Azure customers for evaluation purposes. This is typically by invite only and issued directly by the product team responsible for the feature or service.
* **Public Preview**. An Azure feature marked "public preview" is available to all Azure customers for evaluation purposes. These previews can be turned on through the preview features page as detailed below.

### Finding preview features

You can learn about preview features through the [preview features page](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/preview/). This page lists the preview features that are available for evaluation. To access a preview feature, select its entry on this page and learn more about how to evaluate it. You can also use the **RSS Feed** button on this page to subscribe to notifications and stay informed.

You can also find Azure preview features in the portal as follows:

* Sign in to Azure portal.
* Select **Create a resource** in the resources panel to open the **New** pane.
* Enter the word preview into the search box at the top of the **New** pane.
* A list of available preview features is displayed, with the word **(preview)** next to each one.

Typical portal preview features provide performance, navigation, and accessibility improvements to the Azure portal interface. It will be branded with **Microsoft Azure (Preview)** in the top bar, so you will know you are in the preview portal.

Azure PowerShell

* PowerShell and module
* Designed for automation
* Multi-platform with PowerShell Core
* Simple to use
  + Connect-AzAccount – log into Azure
  + Get-AzResourceGroup – list resource groups
  + New-AzResourceGroup – create new resource group
  + New-AzVm – create virtual machine

Azure CLI

* Command Line Interface for Azure
* Designed for automation
* Multi-platform (Python)
* Simple to use
  + az login – log into Azure
  + az group list – list resource groups
  + az group create – create new resource group
  + az vm create – create virtual machine
* Native OS terminal scripting

Azure Cloud Shell

* Cloud-based scripting environment
* Completely free
* Supports both Azure PowerShell and Azure CLI
* Dozen of additional tools
* Multiple client interfaces
  + Azure Portal integration (portal.azure.com)
  + Shell Portal (shell.azure.com)
  + Visual Studio Code Extension
  + Windows Terminal
  + Azure Mobile App
  + Microsoft Docs integration

## What is Azure Advisor?

**Azure Advisor** is a free service built into Azure that provides recommendations on high availability, security, performance, operational excellence, and cost. Advisor analyzes your deployed services and looks for ways to improve your environment across each of these areas. We'll focus on the cost recommendations, but you'll want to take some time to review the other recommendations as well.

Advisor makes cost recommendations in the following areas:

1. **Reduce costs by eliminating unprovisioned Azure ExpressRoute circuits.** This recommendation identifies ExpressRoute circuits that have been in the provider status of Not Provisioned for more than one month. Advisor recommends deleting the circuit if you aren't planning to provision the circuit with your connectivity provider.
2. **Buy reserved instances to save money over pay-as-you-go.** Advisor will review your virtual machine usage over the last 30 days and determine if you could save money in the future by purchasing reserved instances. Advisor will show you the regions and sizes where you potentially have the most savings and will show you the estimated savings you might achieve from purchasing reserved instances.
3. **Right-size or shutdown underutilized virtual machines.** This analysis monitors your virtual machine usage for 14 days and then identifies underutilized virtual machines. Virtual machines whose average CPU utilization is 5 percent or less and network usage is 7 MB or less for four or more days are considered underutilized virtual machines. The average CPU utilization threshold is adjustable up to 20 percent. By identifying these virtual machines, you can decide to resize them to a smaller instance type, reducing your costs.

**Note**

If you don't have an Azure subscription, create a [**free account**](https://azure.microsoft.com/free/) before you begin.

Let's take a look at where you can find Azure Advisor in the portal.

1. Sign in to the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/) using your Microsoft account.
2. Expand the left-hand navigation from the top-left menu and click on **All Services**.
3. Click on the **Management + governance** category and find **Advisor**. You can also type Advisor in the services filter box to filter on just that name.
4. Click on Advisor, and you'll be taken to the Advisor recommendations dashboard where you can see all the recommendations for your subscription. You'll see a box for each category of recommendations.

**Note**

You might not have any recommendations on cost in Advisor. Assessments may not have completed yet or Advisor may not have recommendations.

Clicking on the **Cost** box will take you to detailed recommendations where you can see the recommendations that Advisor has.

Clicking on any recommendation will take you to the details for that specific recommendation. Then you'll be able to take a specific action, such as resizing virtual machines to reduce spending.

These recommendations are all places where you might be inefficiently spending money. They're a great place to start and continue to revisit when looking for places to reduce costs. In our example, there's an opportunity for us to save around $700 per month if we take these recommendations. This savings adds up, so be sure to review these recommendations periodically across all areas.

## Azure Cost Management

Azure Cost Management is another free, built-in Azure tool that can be used to gain greater insights into where your cloud money is going. You can see historical breakdowns of what services you are spending your money on and how it is tracking against budgets that you have set. You can set budgets, schedule reports, and analyze your cost areas.

As you can see, Azure offers tools at no additional cost that you can use to track and predict your cloud spend and identify where your environment may be inefficient from a cost perspective. You'll want to make sure you make it a regular practice to review the reports and recommendations that these tools make available, so you can unlock savings across your cloud footprint.

## Azure Advisor

* **Personalized consultant** service
* Designed to provide **recommendations** and **best practices** for
  + **Cost** (SKU sizes, idle services, reserved instances, etc.)
  + **Security** (MFA settings, vulnerability settings, agent installations, etc.)
  + **Reliability** (redundancy settings, soft delete on blobs, etc.)
  + **Performance** (SKU sizes, SDK versions, IO throttling, etc.)
  + **Operational** Excellence (service health, subscription limits, etc.)
* **Actionable** recommendations
* **Free**!

# Deploy your site to Azure

Your first step will likely be to re-create your on-premises configuration in the cloud.

This basic configuration will give you a sense of how networks are configured, and how network traffic moves in and out of Azure.

## Your e-commerce site at a glance

Larger enterprise systems are often composed of multiple inter-connected applications and services that work together. You might have a front-end web system that displays inventory and allows customers to create an order. That might talk to a variety of web services to provide the inventory data, manage user profiles, process credit cards, and request fulfillment of processed orders.

There are several strategies and patterns employed by software architects and designers to make these complex systems easier to design, build, manage, and maintain. Let's look at a few of them, starting with loosely coupled architectures.

### Benefits of Loosely Coupled Architectures

### Using an N-tier architecture

An architectural pattern that can be used to build loosely coupled systems is N-tier.

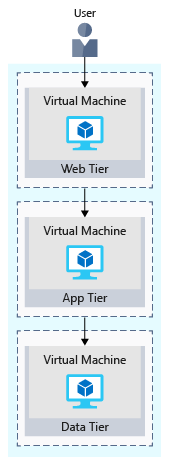
An [N-tier architecture](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/guide/architecture-styles/n-tier) divides an application into two or more logical tiers. Architecturally, a higher tier can access services from a lower tier, but a lower tier should never access a higher tier.

Tiers help separate concerns and are ideally designed to be reusable. Using a tiered architecture also simplifies maintenance. Tiers can be updated or replaced independently, and new tiers can be inserted if needed.

Three-tier refers to an n-tier application that has three tiers. Your e-commerce web application follows this three-tier architecture:

* The **web tier** provides the web interface to your users through a browser.
* The **application tier** runs business logic.
* The **data tier** includes databases and other storage that hold product information and customer orders.

The following illustration shows the flow of a request from the user to the data tier.

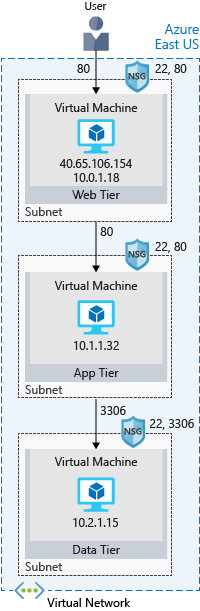


When the user clicks the button to place the order, the request is sent to the web tier, along with the user's address and payment information. The web tier passes this information to the application tier, which would validate payment information and check inventory. The application tier might then store the order in the data tier, to be picked up later for fulfillment.

## Your e-commerce site running on Azure

Azure provides many different ways to host your web applications, from fully pre-configured environments that host your code, to virtual machines that you configure, customize, and manage.

Let's say you choose to run your e-commerce site on virtual machines. Here's what that might look like in your test environment running on Azure. The following illustration shows a three-tier architecture running on virtual machines with security features enabled to restrict inbound requests.



**What's an Azure region?**

A region is one or more Azure data centers within a specific geographic location. East US, West US, and North Europe are examples of regions. In this instance, you see that the application is running in the East US region.

**What's a virtual network?**

A virtual network is a logically isolated network on Azure. Azure virtual networks will be familiar to you if you've set up networks on Hyper-V, VMware, or even on other public clouds. A virtual network allows Azure resources to securely communicate with each other, the internet, and on-premises networks. A virtual network is scoped to a single region; however, multiple virtual networks from different regions can be connected together using virtual network peering.

Virtual networks can be segmented into one or more subnets. Subnets help you organize and secure your resources in discrete sections. The web, application, and data tiers each have a single VM. All three VMs are in the same virtual network but are in separate subnets.

Users interact with the web tier directly, so that VM has a public IP address along with a private IP address. Users don't interact with the application or data tiers, so these VMs each have a private IP address only.

You can also keep your service or data tiers in your on-premises network, placing your web tier into the cloud, but keeping tight control over other aspects of your application. A VPN gateway (or virtual network gateway), enables this scenario. It can provide a secure connection between an Azure Virtual Network and an on-premises location over the internet.

Azure manages the physical hardware for you. You configure virtual networks and gateways through software, which enables you to treat a virtual network just like your own network. You choose which networks your virtual network can reach, whether that's the public internet or other networks in the private IP address space.

**What's a network security group?**

A network security group, or NSG, allows or denies inbound network traffic to your Azure resources. Think of a network security group as a cloud-level firewall for your network.

For example, notice that the VM in the web tier allows inbound traffic on ports 22 (SSH) and 80 (HTTP). This VM's network security group allows inbound traffic over these ports from all sources. You can configure a network security group to accept traffic only from known sources, such as IP addresses that you trust.

**Note**

Port 22 enables you to connect directly to Linux systems over SSH. Here we show port 22 open for learning purposes. In practice, you might configure VPN access to your virtual network to increase security.

## Summary

Your three-tier application is now running on Azure in the East US region. A region is one or more Azure data centers within a specific geographic location.

Each tier can access services only from a lower tier. The VM running in the web tier has a public IP address because it receives traffic from the internet. The VMs in the lower tiers, the application and data tiers, each have private IP addresses because they don't communicate directly over the internet.

Virtual networks enable you to group and isolate related systems. You define network security groups to control what traffic can flow through a virtual network.

The configuration you saw here is a good start. But when you deploy your e-commerce site to production in the cloud, you'll likely run into the same problems as you did in your on-premises deployment.

# Network security groups

You can use an Azure network security group to filter network traffic to and from Azure resources in an Azure virtual network. A network security group contains [security rules](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/network-security-groups-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#security-rules) that allow or deny inbound network traffic to, or outbound network traffic from, several types of Azure resources. For each rule, you can specify source and destination, port, and protocol.

This article describes properties of a network security group rule, the [default security rules](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/network-security-groups-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#default-security-rules) that are applied, and the rule properties that you can modify to create an [augmented security rule](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/network-security-groups-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#augmented-security-rules).

## Security rules

A network security group contains zero, or as many rules as desired, within Azure subscription [limits](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/azure-subscription-service-limits?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json#azure-resource-manager-virtual-networking-limits). Each rule specifies the following properties:

| **SECURITY RULES** | |
| --- | --- |
| **Property** | **Explanation** |
| Name | A unique name within the network security group. |
| Priority | A number between 100 and 4096. Rules are processed in priority order, with lower numbers processed before higher numbers, because lower numbers have higher priority. Once traffic matches a rule, processing stops. As a result, any rules that exist with lower priorities (higher numbers) that have the same attributes as rules with higher priorities are not processed. |
| Source or destination | Any, or an individual IP address, classless inter-domain routing (CIDR) block (10.0.0.0/24, for example), service tag, or application security group. If you specify an address for an Azure resource, specify the private IP address assigned to the resource. Network security groups are processed after Azure translates a public IP address to a private IP address for inbound traffic, and before Azure translates a private IP address to a public IP address for outbound traffic. . Specifying a range, a service tag, or application security group, enables you to create fewer security rules. The ability to specify multiple individual IP addresses and ranges (you cannot specify multiple service tags or application groups) in a rule is referred to as [augmented security rules](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/network-security-groups-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#augmented-security-rules). Augmented security rules can only be created in network security groups created through the Resource Manager deployment model. You cannot specify multiple IP addresses and IP address ranges in network security groups created through the classic deployment model. |
| Protocol | TCP, UDP, ICMP or Any. |
| Direction | Whether the rule applies to inbound, or outbound traffic. |
| Port range | You can specify an individual or range of ports. For example, you could specify 80 or 10000-10005. Specifying ranges enables you to create fewer security rules. Augmented security rules can only be created in network security groups created through the Resource Manager deployment model. You cannot specify multiple ports or port ranges in the same security rule in network security groups created through the classic deployment model. |
| Action | Allow or deny |

Network security group security rules are evaluated by priority using the 5-tuple information (source, source port, destination, destination port, and protocol) to allow or deny the traffic. You may not create two security rules with the same priority and direction. A flow record is created for existing connections. Communication is allowed or denied based on the connection state of the flow record. The flow record allows a network security group to be stateful. If you specify an outbound security rule to any address over port 80, for example, it's not necessary to specify an inbound security rule for the response to the outbound traffic. You only need to specify an inbound security rule if communication is initiated externally. The opposite is also true. If inbound traffic is allowed over a port, it's not necessary to specify an outbound security rule to respond to traffic over the port.

Existing connections may not be interrupted when you remove a security rule that enabled the flow. Traffic flows are interrupted when connections are stopped and no traffic is flowing in either direction, for at least a few minutes.

There are limits to the number of security rules you can create in a network security group. For details, see [Azure limits](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/azure-subscription-service-limits?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json#azure-resource-manager-virtual-networking-limits).

### Default security rules

Azure creates the following default rules in each network security group that you create:

#### Inbound

##### AllowVNetInBound

| **ALLOWVNETINBOUND** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 65000 | VirtualNetwork | 0-65535 | VirtualNetwork | 0-65535 | Any | Allow |

##### AllowAzureLoadBalancerInBound

| **ALLOWAZURELOADBALANCERINBOUND** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 65001 | AzureLoadBalancer | 0-65535 | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0-65535 | Any | Allow |

##### DenyAllInbound

| **DENYALLINBOUND** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 65500 | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0-65535 | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0-65535 | Any | Deny |

#### Outbound

##### AllowVnetOutBound

| **ALLOWVNETOUTBOUND** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 65000 | VirtualNetwork | 0-65535 | VirtualNetwork | 0-65535 | Any | Allow |

##### AllowInternetOutBound

| **ALLOWINTERNETOUTBOUND** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 65001 | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0-65535 | Internet | 0-65535 | Any | Allow |

##### DenyAllOutBound

| **DENYALLOUTBOUND** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 65500 | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0-65535 | 0.0.0.0/0 | 0-65535 | Any | Deny |

In the **Source** and **Destination** columns, VirtualNetwork, AzureLoadBalancer, and Internet are [service tags](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/service-tags-overview), rather than IP addresses. In the protocol column, **Any** encompasses TCP, UDP, and ICMP. When creating a rule, you can specify TCP, UDP, ICMP or Any. 0.0.0.0/0 in the **Source** and **Destination** columns represents all addresses. Clients like Azure portal, Azure CLI, or PowerShell can use \* or any for this expression.

You cannot remove the default rules, but you can override them by creating rules with higher priorities.

### Augmented security rules

Augmented security rules simplify security definition for virtual networks, allowing you to define larger and complex network security policies, with fewer rules. You can combine multiple ports and multiple explicit IP addresses and ranges into a single, easily understood security rule. Use augmented rules in the source, destination, and port fields of a rule. To simplify maintenance of your security rule definition, combine augmented security rules with [service tags](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/service-tags-overview) or [application security groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/network-security-groups-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#application-security-groups). There are limits to the number of addresses, ranges, and ports that you can specify in a rule. For details, see [Azure limits](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/azure-subscription-service-limits?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json#azure-resource-manager-virtual-networking-limits).

#### Service tags

A service tag represents a group of IP address prefixes from a given Azure service. It helps to minimize the complexity of frequent updates on network security rules.

For more information, see [Azure service tags](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/service-tags-overview). For an example on how to use the Storage service tag to restrict network access, see [Restrict network access to PaaS resources](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/tutorial-restrict-network-access-to-resources).

#### Application security groups

Application security groups enable you to configure network security as a natural extension of an application's structure, allowing you to group virtual machines and define network security policies based on those groups. You can reuse your security policy at scale without manual maintenance of explicit IP addresses. To learn more, see [Application security groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/application-security-groups).

## Azure platform considerations

* **Virtual IP of the host node**: Basic infrastructure services like DHCP, DNS, IMDS, and health monitoring are provided through the virtualized host IP addresses 168.63.129.16 and 169.254.169.254. These IP addresses belong to Microsoft and are the only virtualized IP addresses used in all regions for this purpose. Effective security rules and effective routes will not include these platform rules. To override this basic infrastructure communication, you can create a security rule to deny traffic by using the following [service tags](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/service-tags-overview) on your Network Security Group rules: AzurePlatformDNS, AzurePlatformIMDS, AzurePlatformLKM. Learn how to [diagnose network traffic filtering](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/diagnose-network-traffic-filter-problem) and [diagnose network routing](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/diagnose-network-routing-problem).
* **Licensing (Key Management Service)**: Windows images running in virtual machines must be licensed. To ensure licensing, a request is sent to the Key Management Service host servers that handle such queries. The request is made outbound through port 1688. For deployments using [default route 0.0.0.0/0](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview#default-route) configuration, this platform rule will be disabled.
* **Virtual machines in load-balanced pools**: The source port and address range applied are from the originating computer, not the load balancer. The destination port and address range are for the destination computer, not the load balancer.
* **Azure service instances**: Instances of several Azure services, such as HDInsight, Application Service Environments, and Virtual Machine Scale Sets are deployed in virtual network subnets. For a complete list of services you can deploy into virtual networks, see [Virtual network for Azure services](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-network-for-azure-services#services-that-can-be-deployed-into-a-virtual-network). Ensure you familiarize yourself with the port requirements for each service before applying a network security group to the subnet the resource is deployed in. If you deny ports required by the service, the service doesn't function properly.
* **Sending outbound email**: Microsoft recommends that you utilize authenticated SMTP relay services (typically connected via TCP port 587, but often others, as well) to send email from Azure Virtual Machines. SMTP relay services specialize in sender reputation, to minimize the possibility that third-party email providers reject messages. Such SMTP relay services include, but are not limited to, Exchange Online Protection and SendGrid. Use of SMTP relay services is in no way restricted in Azure, regardless of your subscription type.

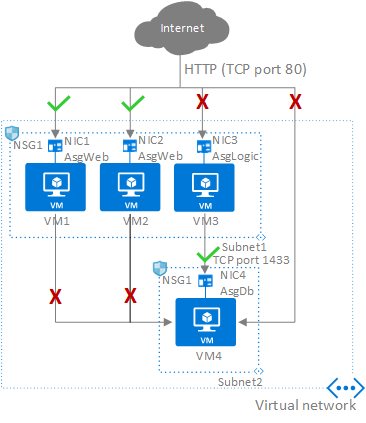
If you created your Azure subscription prior to November 15, 2017, in addition to being able to use SMTP relay services, you can send email directly over TCP port 25. If you created your subscription after November 15, 2017, you may not be able to send email directly over port 25. The behavior of outbound communication over port 25 depends on the type of subscription you have, as follows:

* + **Enterprise Agreement**: Outbound port 25 communication is allowed. You are able to send an outbound email directly from virtual machines to external email providers, with no restrictions from the Azure platform.
  + **Pay-as-you-go:** Outbound port 25 communication is blocked from all resources. If you need to send email from a virtual machine directly to external email providers (not using an authenticated SMTP relay), you can make a request to remove the restriction. Requests are reviewed and approved at Microsoft's discretion and are only granted after anti-fraud checks are performed. To make a request, open a support case with the issue type Technical, Virtual Network Connectivity, Cannot send e-mail (SMTP/Port 25). In your support case, include details about why your subscription needs to send email directly to mail providers, instead of going through an authenticated SMTP relay. If your subscription is exempted, only virtual machines created after the exemption date are able to communicate outbound over port 25.
  + **MSDN, Azure Pass, Azure in Open, Education, BizSpark, and Free trial**: Outbound port 25 communication is blocked from all resources. No requests to remove the restriction can be made, because requests are not granted. If you need to send email from your virtual machine, you have to use an SMTP relay service.
  + **Cloud service provider**: Customers that are consuming Azure resources via a cloud service provider can create a support case with their cloud service provider, and request that the provider create an unblock case on their behalf, if a secure SMTP relay cannot be used.

If Azure allows you to send email over port 25, Microsoft cannot guarantee email providers will accept inbound email from your virtual machine. If a specific provider rejects mail from your virtual machine, work directly with the provider to resolve any message delivery or spam filtering issues, or use an authenticated SMTP relay service.

# Application security groups

Application security groups enable you to configure network security as a natural extension of an application's structure, allowing you to group virtual machines and define network security policies based on those groups. You can reuse your security policy at scale without manual maintenance of explicit IP addresses. The platform handles the complexity of explicit IP addresses and multiple rule sets, allowing you to focus on your business logic. To better understand application security groups, consider the following example:



In the previous picture, NIC1 and NIC2 are members of the AsgWeb application security group. NIC3 is a member of the AsgLogic application security group. NIC4 is a member of the AsgDb application security group. Though each network interface in this example is a member of only one network security group, a network interface can be a member of multiple application security groups, up to the [Azure limits](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/azure-subscription-service-limits?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json#azure-resource-manager-virtual-networking-limits). None of the network interfaces have an associated network security group. NSG1 is associated to both subnets and contains the following rules:

## Allow-HTTP-Inbound-Internet

This rule is needed to allow traffic from the internet to the web servers. Because inbound traffic from the internet is denied by the **DenyAllInbound** default security rule, no additional rule is needed for the AsgLogic or AsgDb application security groups.

| **ALLOW-HTTP-INBOUND-INTERNET** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 100 | Internet | \* | AsgWeb | 80 | TCP | Allow |

## Deny-Database-All

Because the **AllowVNetInBound** default security rule allows all communication between resources in the same virtual network, this rule is needed to deny traffic from all resources.

| **DENY-DATABASE-ALL** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 120 | \* | \* | AsgDb | 1433 | Any | Deny |

## Allow-Database-BusinessLogic

This rule allows traffic from the AsgLogic application security group to the AsgDb application security group. The priority for this rule is higher than the priority for the Deny-Database-All rule. As a result, this rule is processed before the Deny-Database-All rule, so traffic from the AsgLogic application security group is allowed, whereas all other traffic is blocked.

| **ALLOW-DATABASE-BUSINESSLOGIC** | | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Priority** | **Source** | **Source ports** | **Destination** | **Destination ports** | **Protocol** | **Access** |
| 110 | AsgLogic | \* | AsgDb | 1433 | TCP | Allow |

The rules that specify an application security group as the source or destination are only applied to the network interfaces that are members of the application security group. If the network interface is not a member of an application security group, the rule is not applied to the network interface, even though the network security group is associated to the subnet.

Application security groups have the following constraints:

* There are limits to the number of application security groups you can have in a subscription, as well as other limits related to application security groups. For details, see [Azure limits](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/azure-subscription-service-limits?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json#azure-resource-manager-virtual-networking-limits).
* You can specify one application security group as the source and destination in a security rule. You cannot specify multiple application security groups in the source or destination.
* All network interfaces assigned to an application security group have to exist in the same virtual network that the first network interface assigned to the application security group is in. For example, if the first network interface assigned to an application security group named AsgWeb is in the virtual network named VNet1, then all subsequent network interfaces assigned to ASGWeb must exist in VNet1. You cannot add network interfaces from different virtual networks to the same application security group.
* If you specify an application security group as the source and destination in a security rule, the network interfaces in both application security groups must exist in the same virtual network. For example, if AsgLogic contained network interfaces from VNet1, and AsgDb contained network interfaces from VNet2, you could not assign AsgLogic as the source and AsgDb as the destination in a rule. All network interfaces for both the source and destination application security groups need to exist in the same virtual network.

**Tip**

To minimize the number of security rules you need, and the need to change the rules, plan out the application security groups you need and create rules using service tags or application security groups, rather than individual IP addresses, or ranges of IP addresses, whenever possible.

## System routes

Azure automatically creates system routes and assigns the routes to each subnet in a virtual network. You can't create system routes, nor can you remove system routes, but you can override some system routes with [custom routes](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#custom-routes). Azure creates default system routes for each subnet, and adds additional [optional default routes](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#optional-default-routes) to specific subnets, or every subnet, when you use specific Azure capabilities.

### Default

Each route contains an address prefix and next hop type. When traffic leaving a subnet is sent to an IP address within the address prefix of a route, the route that contains the prefix is the route Azure uses. Learn more about [how Azure selects a route](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#how-azure-selects-a-route) when multiple routes contain the same prefixes, or overlapping prefixes. Whenever a virtual network is created, Azure automatically creates the following default system routes for each subnet within the virtual network:

| **DEFAULT** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Source** | **Address prefixes** | **Next hop type** |
| Default | Unique to the virtual network | Virtual network |
| Default | 0.0.0.0/0 | Internet |
| Default | 10.0.0.0/8 | None |
| Default | 192.168.0.0/16 | None |
| Default | 100.64.0.0/10 | None |

The next hop types listed in the previous table represent how Azure routes traffic destined for the address prefix listed. Explanations for the next hop types follow:

* **Virtual network**: Routes traffic between address ranges within the [address space](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/manage-virtual-network#add-or-remove-an-address-range) of a virtual network. Azure creates a route with an address prefix that corresponds to each address range defined within the address space of a virtual network. If the virtual network address space has multiple address ranges defined, Azure creates an individual route for each address range. Azure automatically routes traffic between subnets using the routes created for each address range. You don't need to define gateways for Azure to route traffic between subnets. Though a virtual network contains subnets, and each subnet has a defined address range, Azure does not create default routes for subnet address ranges, because each subnet address range is within an address range of the address space of a virtual network.
* **Internet**: Routes traffic specified by the address prefix to the Internet. The system default route specifies the 0.0.0.0/0 address prefix. If you don't override Azure's default routes, Azure routes traffic for any address not specified by an address range within a virtual network, to the Internet, with one exception. If the destination address is for one of Azure's services, Azure routes the traffic directly to the service over Azure's backbone network, rather than routing the traffic to the Internet. Traffic between Azure services does not traverse the Internet, regardless of which Azure region the virtual network exists in, or which Azure region an instance of the Azure service is deployed in. You can override Azure's default system route for the 0.0.0.0/0 address prefix with a [custom route](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#custom-routes).
* **None**: Traffic routed to the **None** next hop type is dropped, rather than routed outside the subnet. Azure automatically creates default routes for the following address prefixes:
  + **10.0.0.0/8 and 192.168.0.0/16**: Reserved for private use in RFC 1918.
  + **100.64.0.0/10**: Reserved in RFC 6598.

If you assign any of the previous address ranges within the address space of a virtual network, Azure automatically changes the next hop type for the route from **None** to **Virtual network**. If you assign an address range to the address space of a virtual network that includes, but isn't the same as, one of the four reserved address prefixes, Azure removes the route for the prefix and adds a route for the address prefix you added, with **Virtual network** as the next hop type.

### Optional default routes

Azure adds additional default system routes for different Azure capabilities, but only if you enable the capabilities. Depending on the capability, Azure adds optional default routes to either specific subnets within the virtual network, or to all subnets within a virtual network. The additional system routes and next hop types that Azure may add when you enable different capabilities are:

| **OPTIONAL DEFAULT ROUTES** | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Source** | **Address prefixes** | **Next hop type** | **Subnet within virtual network that route is added to** |
| Default | Unique to the virtual network, for example: 10.1.0.0/16 | VNet peering | All |
| Virtual network gateway | Prefixes advertised from on-premises via BGP, or configured in the local network gateway | Virtual network gateway | All |
| Default | Multiple | VirtualNetworkServiceEndpoint | Only the subnet a service endpoint is enabled for. |

* **Virtual network (VNet) peering**: When you create a virtual network peering between two virtual networks, a route is added for each address range within the address space of each virtual network a peering is created for. Learn more about [virtual network peering](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-network-peering-overview).
* **Virtual network gateway**: One or more routes with Virtual network gateway listed as the next hop type are added when a virtual network gateway is added to a virtual network. The source is also virtual network gateway, because the gateway adds the routes to the subnet. If your on-premises network gateway exchanges border gateway protocol ([BGP](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#border-gateway-protocol)) routes with an Azure virtual network gateway, a route is added for each route propagated from the on-premises network gateway. It's recommended that you summarize on-premises routes to the largest address ranges possible, so the fewest number of routes are propagated to an Azure virtual network gateway. There are limits to the number of routes you can propagate to an Azure virtual network gateway. For details, see [Azure limits](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/azure-subscription-service-limits?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json#networking-limits).
* **VirtualNetworkServiceEndpoint**: The public IP addresses for certain services are added to the route table by Azure when you enable a service endpoint to the service. Service endpoints are enabled for individual subnets within a virtual network, so the route is only added to the route table of a subnet a service endpoint is enabled for. The public IP addresses of Azure services change periodically. Azure manages the addresses in the route table automatically when the addresses change. Learn more about [virtual network service endpoints](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-network-service-endpoints-overview), and the services you can create service endpoints for.

**Note**

The **VNet peering** and **VirtualNetworkServiceEndpoint** next hop types are only added to route tables of subnets within virtual networks created through the Azure Resource Manager deployment model. The next hop types are not added to route tables that are associated to virtual network subnets created through the classic deployment model. Learn more about Azure [**deployment models**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/deployment-models?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json).

## Custom routes

You create custom routes by either creating [user-defined](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#user-defined) routes, or by exchanging [border gateway protocol](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#border-gateway-protocol) (BGP) routes between your on-premises network gateway and an Azure virtual network gateway.

### User-defined

You can create custom, or user-defined(static), routes in Azure to override Azure's default system routes, or to add additional routes to a subnet's route table. In Azure, you create a route table, then associate the route table to zero or more virtual network subnets. Each subnet can have zero or one route table associated to it. To learn about the maximum number of routes you can add to a route table and the maximum number of user-defined route tables you can create per Azure subscription, see [Azure limits](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/azure-subscription-service-limits?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json#networking-limits). If you create a route table and associate it to a subnet, the routes within it are combined with, or override, the default routes Azure adds to a subnet by default.

You can specify the following next hop types when creating a user-defined route:

* **Virtual appliance**: A virtual appliance is a virtual machine that typically runs a network application, such as a firewall. To learn about a variety of pre-configured network virtual appliances you can deploy in a virtual network, see the [Azure Marketplace](https://azuremarketplace.microsoft.com/marketplace/apps/category/networking?page=1&subcategories=appliances). When you create a route with the **virtual appliance** hop type, you also specify a next hop IP address. The IP address can be:
  + The [private IP address](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-network-ip-addresses-overview-arm#private-ip-addresses) of a network interface attached to a virtual machine. Any network interface attached to a virtual machine that forwards network traffic to an address other than its own must have the Azure Enable IP forwarding option enabled for it. The setting disables Azure's check of the source and destination for a network interface. Learn more about how to [enable IP forwarding for a network interface](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-network-network-interface#enable-or-disable-ip-forwarding). Though Enable IP forwarding is an Azure setting, you may also need to enable IP forwarding within the virtual machine's operating system for the appliance to forward traffic between private IP addresses assigned to Azure network interfaces. If the appliance must route traffic to a public IP address, it must either proxy the traffic, or network address translate the private IP address of the source's private IP address to its own private IP address, which Azure then network address translates to a public IP address, before sending the traffic to the Internet. To determine required settings within the virtual machine, see the documentation for your operating system or network application. To understand outbound connections in Azure, see [Understanding outbound connections](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/load-balancer/load-balancer-outbound-connections?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json).

**Note**

Deploy a virtual appliance into a different subnet than the resources that route through the virtual appliance are deployed in. Deploying the virtual appliance to the same subnet, then applying a route table to the subnet that routes traffic through the virtual appliance, can result in routing loops, where traffic never leaves the subnet.

* + The private IP address of an Azure [internal load balancer](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/load-balancer/load-balancer-get-started-ilb-arm-portal?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json). A load balancer is often used as part of a [high availability strategy for network virtual appliances](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/reference-architectures/dmz/nva-ha?toc=%2fazure%2fvirtual-network%2ftoc.json).

You can define a route with 0.0.0.0/0 as the address prefix and a next hop type of virtual appliance, enabling the appliance to inspect the traffic and determine whether to forward or drop the traffic. If you intend to create a user-defined route that contains the 0.0.0.0/0 address prefix, read [0.0.0.0/0 address prefix](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#default-route) first.

* **Virtual network gateway**: Specify when you want traffic destined for specific address prefixes routed to a virtual network gateway. The virtual network gateway must be created with type **VPN**. You cannot specify a virtual network gateway created as type **ExpressRoute** in a user-defined route because with ExpressRoute, you must use BGP for custom routes. You can define a route that directs traffic destined for the 0.0.0.0/0 address prefix to a [route-based](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/vpn-gateway/vpn-gateway-about-vpn-gateway-settings?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json#vpntype) virtual network gateway. On your premises, you might have a device that inspects the traffic and determines whether to forward or drop the traffic. If you intend to create a user-defined route for the 0.0.0.0/0 address prefix, read [0.0.0.0/0 address prefix](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#default-route) first. Instead of configuring a user-defined route for the 0.0.0.0/0 address prefix, you can advertise a route with the 0.0.0.0/0 prefix via BGP, if you've [enabled BGP for a VPN virtual network gateway](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/vpn-gateway/vpn-gateway-bgp-resource-manager-ps?toc=/azure/virtual-network/toc.json).
* **None**: Specify when you want to drop traffic to an address prefix, rather than forwarding the traffic to a destination. If you haven't fully configured a capability, Azure may list None for some of the optional system routes. For example, if you see None listed as the **Next hop IP address** with a **Next hop type** of Virtual network gateway or Virtual appliance, it may be because the device isn't running, or isn't fully configured. Azure creates system [default routes](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#default) for reserved address prefixes with **None** as the next hop type.
* **Virtual network**: Specify when you want to override the default routing within a virtual network. See [Routing example](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/virtual-network/virtual-networks-udr-overview?WT.mc_id=AZ-MVP-5003556#routing-example), for an example of why you might create a route with the **Virtual network** hop type.
* **Internet**: Specify when you want to explicitly route traffic destined to an address prefix to the Internet, or if you want traffic destined for Azure services with public IP addresses kept within the Azure backbone network.

You cannot specify **VNet peering** or **VirtualNetworkServiceEndpoint** as the next hop type in user-defined routes. Routes with the **VNet peering** or **VirtualNetworkServiceEndpoint** next hop types are only created by Azure, when you configure a virtual network peering, or a service endpoint.

# Protect virtual networks by using Azure Firewall

A firewall is a network security device that monitors incoming and outgoing network traffic and decides whether to allow or block specific traffic based on a defined set of security rules. You can create firewall rules that specify ranges of IP addresses. Only clients granted IP addresses from within those ranges are allowed to access the destination server. Firewall rules can also include specific network protocol and port information.

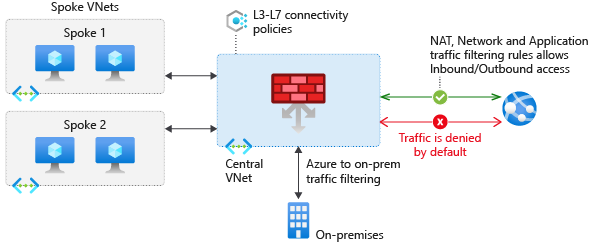
Tailwind Traders currently runs firewall appliances, which combine hardware and software, to protect its on-premises network. These firewall appliances require a monthly licensing fee to operate, and they require IT staff to perform routine maintenance. As Tailwind Traders moves to the cloud, the IT manager wants to know what Azure services can protect both the company's cloud networks and its on-premises networks.

In this part, you explore Azure Firewall.

## What's Azure Firewall?

[Azure Firewall](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/azure-firewall) is a managed, cloud-based network security service that helps protect resources in your Azure virtual networks. A virtual network is similar to a traditional network that you'd operate in your own datacenter. It's a fundamental building block for your private network that enables virtual machines and other compute resources to securely communicate with each other, the internet, and on-premises networks.

Here's a diagram that shows a basic Azure Firewall implementation:

[](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/learn/azure-fundamentals/secure-network-connectivity-azure/media/3-firewall-overview-large.png#lightbox)

Azure Firewall is a stateful firewall. A stateful firewall analyzes the complete context of a network connection, not just an individual packet of network traffic. Azure Firewall features high availability and unrestricted cloud scalability.

Azure Firewall provides a central location to create, enforce, and log application and network connectivity policies across subscriptions and virtual networks. Azure Firewall uses a static (unchanging) public IP address for your virtual network resources, which enables outside firewalls to identify traffic coming from your virtual network. The service is integrated with Azure Monitor to enable logging and analytics.

Azure Firewall provides many features, including:

* Built-in high availability.
* Unrestricted cloud scalability.
* Inbound and outbound filtering rules.
* Inbound Destination Network Address Translation (DNAT) support.
* Azure Monitor logging.

You typically deploy Azure Firewall on a central virtual network to control general network access.

## What can I configure with Azure Firewall?

With Azure Firewall, you can configure:

* Application rules that define fully qualified domain names (FQDNs) that can be accessed from a subnet.
* Network rules that define source address, protocol, destination port, and destination address.
* Network Address Translation (NAT) rules that define destination IP addresses and ports to translate inbound requests.

[Azure Application Gateway](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/application-gateway) also provides a firewall that's called the web application firewall (WAF). WAF provides centralized, inbound protection for your web applications against common exploits and vulnerabilities. [Azure Front Door](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/frontdoor/) and [Azure Content Delivery Network](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/cdn/) also provide WAF services.

# Protect from DDoS attacks by using Azure DDoS Protection

* 3 minutes

Any large company can be the target of a large-scale network attack. Tailwind Traders is no exception. Attackers might flood your network to make a statement or simply for the challenge. As Tailwind Traders moves to the cloud, it wants to understand how Azure can help prevent distributed denial of service (DDoS) and other attacks.

In this part, you learn how Azure DDoS Protection (Standard service tier) helps protect your Azure resources from DDoS attacks. First, let's define what a DDoS attack is.

## What are DDoS attacks?

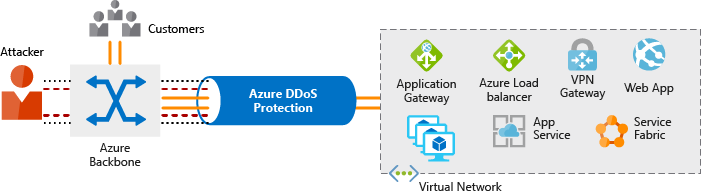
A [distributed denial of service](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/ddos-protection) attack attempts to overwhelm and exhaust an application's resources, making the application slow or unresponsive to legitimate users. DDoS attacks can target any resource that's publicly reachable through the internet, including websites.

## What is Azure DDoS Protection?

[Azure DDoS Protection](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/ddos-protection/) (Standard) helps protect your Azure resources from DDoS attacks.

When you combine DDoS Protection with recommended application design practices, you help provide a defense against DDoS attacks. DDoS Protection uses the scale and elasticity of Microsoft's global network to bring DDoS mitigation capacity to every Azure region. The DDoS Protection service helps protect your Azure applications by analyzing and discarding DDoS traffic at the Azure network edge, before it can affect your service's availability.

This diagram shows network traffic flowing into Azure from both customers and an attacker:



DDoS Protection identifies the attacker's attempt to overwhelm the network and blocks further traffic from them, ensuring that traffic never reaches Azure resources. Legitimate traffic from customers still flows into Azure without any interruption of service.

DDoS Protection can also help you manage your cloud consumption. When you run on-premises, you have a fixed number of compute resources. But in the cloud, elastic computing means that you can automatically scale out your deployment to meet demand. A cleverly designed DDoS attack can cause you to increase your resource allocation, which incurs unneeded expense. DDoS Protection Standard helps ensure that the network load you process reflects customer usage. You can also receive credit for any costs accrued for scaled-out resources during a DDoS attack.

## What service tiers are available to DDoS Protection?

DDoS Protection provides these service tiers:

* **Basic**

The Basic service tier is automatically enabled for free as part of your Azure subscription.

Always-on traffic monitoring and real-time mitigation of common network-level attacks provide the same defenses that Microsoft's online services use. The Basic service tier ensures that Azure infrastructure itself is not affected during a large-scale DDoS attack.

The Azure global network is used to distribute and mitigate attack traffic across Azure regions.

* **Standard**

The Standard service tier provides additional mitigation capabilities that are tuned specifically to Azure Virtual Network resources. DDoS Protection Standard is relatively easy to enable and requires no changes to your applications.

The Standard tier provides always-on traffic monitoring and real-time mitigation of common network-level attacks. It provides the same defenses that Microsoft's online services use.

Protection policies are tuned through dedicated traffic monitoring and machine learning algorithms. Policies are applied to public IP addresses, which are associated with resources deployed in virtual networks such as Azure Load Balancer and Application Gateway.

The Azure global network is used to distribute and mitigate attack traffic across Azure regions.

## What kinds of attacks can DDoS Protection help prevent?

The Standard service tier can help prevent:

* **Volumetric attacks**

The goal of this attack is to flood the network layer with a substantial amount of seemingly legitimate traffic.

* **Protocol attacks**

These attacks render a target inaccessible by exploiting a weakness in the layer 3 and layer 4 protocol stack.

* **Resource-layer (application-layer) attacks (only with web application firewall)**

These attacks target web application packets to disrupt the transmission of data between hosts. You need a web application firewall (WAF) to protect against L7 attacks. DDoS Protection Standard protects the WAF from volumetric and protocol attacks.

**Identity and access**

Network perimeters, firewalls, and physical access controls used to be the primary protection for corporate data. But network perimeters have become increasingly porous with the explosion of bring your own device (BYOD), mobile apps, and cloud applications.

Identity has become the new primary security boundary. Therefore, proper authentication and assignment of privileges is critical to maintaining control of your data.

Your company, Contoso Shipping, is focused on addressing these concerns right away. Your team's new hybrid cloud solution needs to account for mobile apps that have access to secret data when an authorized user is signed in — in addition to having shipping vehicles constantly send a stream of telemetry data that is critical to optimizing the company's business.

**Authentication and authorization**

Two fundamental concepts that need to be understood when talking about identity and access control are authentication and authorization. They underpin everything else that happens and occur sequentially in any identity and access process:

* *Authentication* is the process of establishing the identity of a person or service looking to access a resource. It involves the act of challenging a party for legitimate credentials, and provides the basis for creating a security principal for identity and access control use. It establishes if they are who they say they are.
* *Authorization* is the process of establishing what level of access an authenticated person or service has. It specifies what data they're allowed to access and what they can do with it.

**Note**

Authentication is sometimes shortened to *AuthN*, and authorization is sometimes shortened to *AuthZ*.

Azure provides services to manage both authentication and authorization through Azure Active Directory (Azure AD).

**What is Azure Active Directory?**

Azure AD is a cloud-based identity service. It has built in support for synchronizing with your existing on-premises Active Directory or can be used stand-alone. This means that all your applications, whether on-premises, in the cloud (including Microsoft 365), or even mobile can share the same credentials. Administrators and developers can control access to internal and external data and applications using centralized rules and policies configured in Azure AD.

Azure AD provides services such as:

* **Authentication.** This includes verifying identity to access applications and resources, and providing functionality such as self-service password reset, multi-factor authentication (MFA), a custom banned password list, and smart lockout services.
* **Single-Sign-On (SSO).** SSO enables users to remember only one ID and one password to access multiple applications. A single identity is tied to a user, simplifying the security model. As users change roles or leave an organization, access modifications are tied to that identity, greatly reducing the effort needed to change or disable accounts.
* **Application management.** You can manage your cloud and on-premises apps using Azure AD Application Proxy, SSO, the My apps portal (also referred to as Access panel), and SaaS apps.
* **Business to business (B2B) identity services.** Manage your guest users and external partners while maintaining control over your own corporate data
* **Business-to-Customer (B2C) identity services.** Customize and control how users sign up, sign in, and manage their profiles when using your apps with services.
* **Device Management.** Manage how your cloud or on-premises devices access your corporate data.

Let's explore a few of these in more detail.

**Single sign-on**

The more identities a user has to manage, the greater the risk of a credential-related security incident. More identities mean more passwords to remember and change. Password policies can vary between applications and, as complexity requirements increase, it becomes increasingly difficult for users to remember them.

Now, consider the logistics of managing all those identities. Additional strain is placed on help desks as they deal with account lockouts and password reset requests. If a user leaves an organization, tracking down all those identities and ensuring they are disabled can be challenging. If an identity is overlooked, this could allow access when it should have been eliminated.

With single sign-on (SSO), users need to remember only one ID and one password. Access across applications is granted to a single identity tied to a user, simplifying the security model. As users change roles or leave an organization, access modifications are tied to the single identity, greatly reducing the effort needed to change or disable accounts. Using single sign-on for accounts will make it easier for users to manage their identities and will increase the security capabilities in your environment.

**SSO with Azure Active Directory**

By leveraging Azure AD for SSO you'll also have the ability to combine multiple data sources into an intelligent security graph. This security graph enables the ability to provide threat analysis and real-time identity protection to all accounts in Azure AD, including accounts that are synchronized from your on-premises AD. By using a centralized identity provider, you'll have centralized the security controls, reporting, alerting, and administration of your identity infrastructure.

As Contoso Shipping integrates its existing Active Directory instance with Azure AD, you will make controlling access consistent across the organization. Doing so will also greatly simplify the ability to sign into email and Microsoft 365 documents without having to reauthenticate.

**Multi-factor authentication**

Multi-factor authentication (MFA) provides additional security for your identities by requiring two or more elements for full authentication. These elements fall into three categories:

* *Something you know*
* *Something you possess*
* *Something you are*

**Something you know** would be a password or the answer to a security question. **Something you possess** could be a mobile app that receives a notification or a token-generating device. **Something you are** is typically some sort of biometric property, such as a fingerprint or face scan used on many mobile devices.

Using MFA increases security of your identity by limiting the impact of credential exposure. An attacker who has a user's password would also need to have possession of their phone or their security token generator in order to fully authenticate. Authentication with only a single factor verified is insufficient, and the attacker would be unable to use only those credentials to authenticate. The benefits this brings to security are huge, and we can't emphasize enough the importance of enabling MFA wherever possible.

Azure AD has MFA capabilities built in and will integrate with other third-party MFA providers. MFA should be used for users in the Global Administrator role in Azure AD, because these are highly sensitive accounts. All other accounts can also have MFA enabled.

For Contoso Shipping, you decide to enable MFA any time a user is signing in from a non-domain-connected computer — which includes the mobile apps your drivers use.

**Providing identities to services**

It's usually valuable for services to have identities. Often, and against best practices, credential information is embedded in configuration files. With no security around these configuration files, anyone with access to the systems or repositories can access these credentials and risk exposure.

Azure AD addresses this problem through two methods: service principals and managed identities for Azure services.

**Service principals**

To understand service principals, it's useful to first understand the words **identity** and **principal**, because of how they are used in the identity management world.

An **identity** is just a thing that can be authenticated. Obviously, this includes users with a user name and password, but it can also include applications or other servers, which might authenticate with secret keys or certificates.

A **principal** is an identity acting with certain roles or claims. Usually, it is not useful to consider identity and principal separately, but think of using 'sudo' on a Bash prompt in Linux or on Windows using "run as Administrator." In both those cases, you are still logged in as the same identity as before, but you've changed the role under which you are executing. Groups are often also considered principals because they can have rights assigned.

A **service principal** is an identity that is used by a service or application. And like other identities, it can be assigned roles.

**Managed identities for Azure services**

The creation of service principals can be a tedious process, and there are a lot of touch points that can make maintaining them difficult. Managed identities for Azure services are much easier and will do most of the work for you.

A managed identity can be instantly created for any Azure service that supports it—and the list is constantly growing. When you create a managed identity for a service, you are creating an account on your organization's Active Directory (a specific organization's Active Directory instance is known as an "Active Directory Tenant"). The Azure infrastructure will automatically take care of authenticating the service and managing the account. You can then use that account like any other Azure AD account, including allowing the authenticated service secure access of other Azure resources.

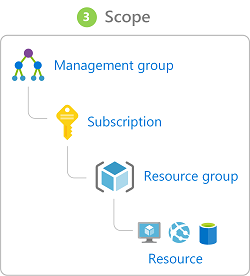
**Role-based access control**

Roles are sets of permissions, like "Read-only" or "Contributor", that users can be granted to access an Azure service instance.

Identities are mapped to roles directly or through group membership. Separating security principals, access permissions, and resources provides simple access management and fine-grained control. Administrators are able to ensure the minimum necessary permissions are granted.

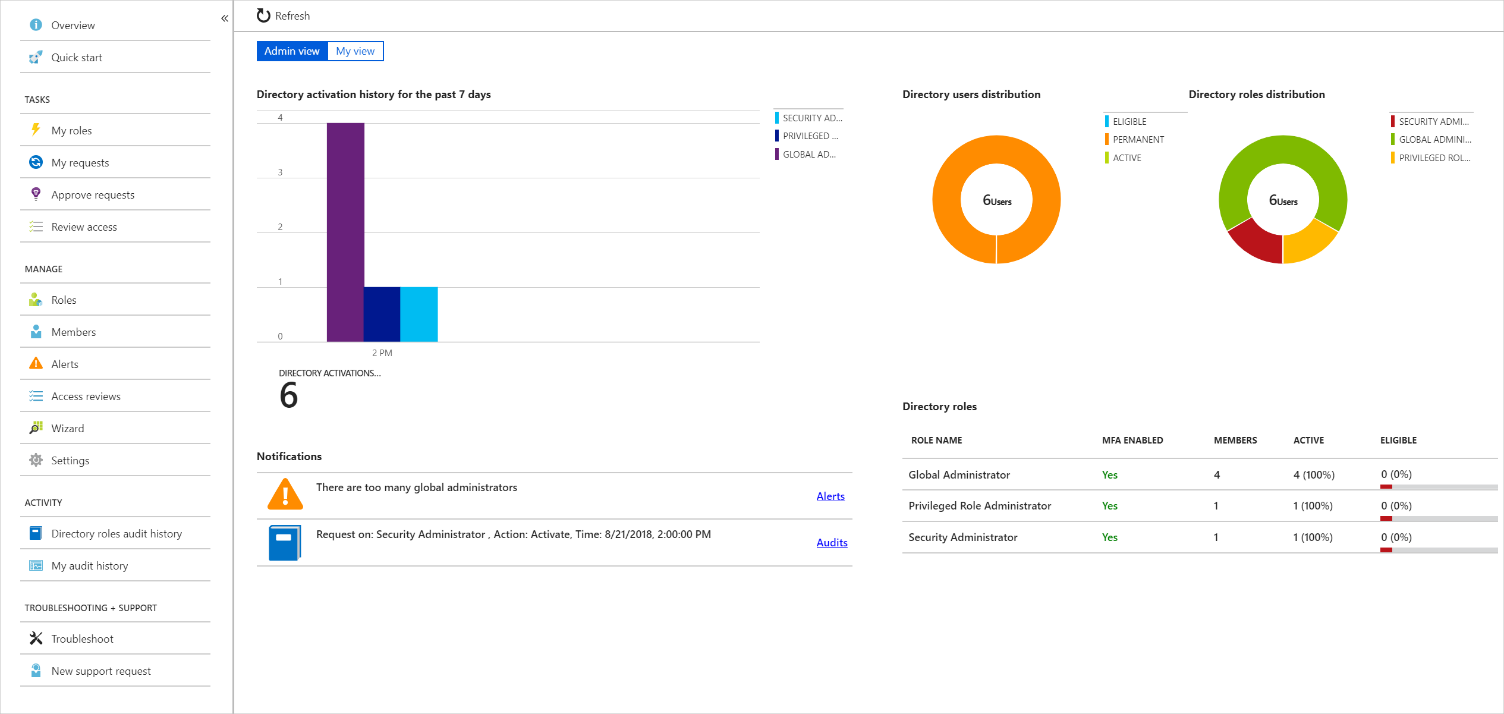
Roles can be granted at the individual service instance level, but they also flow down the Azure Resource Manager hierarchy.

Here's a diagram that shows this relationship. Roles assigned at a higher scope, like an entire subscription, are inherited by child scopes, like service instances.



**Privileged Identity Management**

In addition to managing Azure resource access with role-based access control (RBAC), a comprehensive approach to infrastructure protection should consider including the ongoing auditing of role members as their organization changes and evolves. Azure AD Privileged Identity Management (PIM) is an additional, paid-for offering that provides oversight of role assignments, self-service, and just-in-time role activation and Azure AD and Azure resource access reviews.



**Summary**

Identity allows us to maintain a security perimeter, even outside our physical control. With single sign-on and appropriate role-based access configuration, we can always be sure who has the ability to see and manipulate our data and infrastructure.

Identity

* A user with a username and password.
* Also applications or other servers with secret keys or certificates.
* The fact of being something or someone.

Authentication

The process of **verification/assertion of identity**

Authorization

The process of **ensuring** that only **authenticated identities** get **access to the resources** for which they have been granted access.

Access Management

The process of **controlling**, **verifying**, **tracking** and **managing access** to authorized users and applications.

Azure Active Directory

* Identity and Access Management service in Azure
* Identities management – users, groups, applications
* Access management – subscriptions, resource groups, roles, role assignments, authentication & authorization settings, etc.
* Used by multiple Microsoft cloud platforms
  + Azure
  + Microsoft 365
  + Office 365
  + Live.com services (Skype, OneDrive, etc.)

Multi-factor Authentication (MFA)

* Process of authentication using more than one factor (evidence) to prove identity
* Factor types
  + Knowledge Factor – “Something you know”, ex. password, pin
  + Possession Factor – “Something you have”, ex. phone, token, card, key
  + Physical Characteristic Factor – “Something you are”, ex. fingerprint, voice, face, eye iris
  + Location Factor – “Somewhere you are”, ex. GPS location
* Supported by Azure AD by default (simple on-off switch)

**Free tier**

The free tier is automatically enabled on all Azure subscriptions and provides security policy, continuous security assessment, and actionable security recommendations to help you protect your Azure resources. It monitors the most common app resources in Azure including:

* Compute resources such as VMs, Azure Functions and App Service
* Network access and endpoint security
* Data storage including Azure Storage, Redis cache for Azure, and Azure SQL
* Identity and access including Azure Key Vault
* IoT Hubs and resources

**Standard tier**

The standard tier extends the capabilities of the free tier to workloads running in private and other public clouds to provide unified security management and threat protection across all your hybrid cloud workloads.

The Standard tier adds advanced threat detection capabilities, using analytics and machine learning to identify attacks and zero-day exploits, access and application controls to reduce exposure to network attacks and malware, and more.

Migrating your Security Center subscription from the free tier to the standard tier enables the following features:

* **Security event collection**. Security Center collects logs in a central place so you can search and analyze them to identify important security events that may require your attention.
* **Network Map**. This feature allows you to visualize the topology of your Azure network infrastructure and the traffic to your Azure VMs. It also allows you to create filters by the severity level and recommendations.
* **Just-in-time VM access**. This allows admins to grant access to a VM for a defined period of time. Limiting access helps reduce exposure to outside attacks. This feature is especially useful if you’re working with an outside agency that needs to access your VM.
* **Adaptive application controls (application whitelisting)**. Adaptive application controls uses artificial intelligence to recommend applications to allow. This helps protect VMs by preventing malware and unauthorized software from being installed.
* **Regulatory compliance reports**. In the Regulatory compliance dashboard, you have a clear view of the status of all standard regulatory assessments within your environment.
* **File integrity monitoring**. This feature examines files and registries of operating system, application software, and others in Windows and Linux (computers and VMs) for changes that might indicate an attack.
* **Adaptive Network Hardening**. Adaptive Network Hardening provides recommendations to harden applied NSG rules. It uses machine learning algorithms that factors in actual traffic, known trusted configuration, threat intelligence, and other indicators of compromise, and then provides recommendations to allow traffic only from specific IP/port tuples.
* **Security alerts**. Security Center supports a variety of security alerts such as detection of potential distributed denial-of-service (DDOS) attacks. Just-in-time alerts gives you the chance to investigate evolving issues before they result in a service failure.
* **Threat intelligence**. This feature can help determine the nature of an attack, the attack point of origin, and more.
* **Workflow Automation**. Workflow automation is a collection of procedures that can be executed from Security Center once a certain playbook is triggered from selected alert. Workflow automation can help to automate and orchestrate your response to a specific security alert detected by Security Center.

**Switch to the Standard tier**

You can try the Standard tier for free for 30 days. This allows you to evaluate the additional features, see how your current environment will benefit from them, and decide whether they’re worth the investment.

You can enable Security Center on a per-subscription basis. Each subscription can choose what elements you want to enroll. Selecting the **Coverage** item under **POLICY & COMPLIANCE** will list all your available subscriptions (Not covered, Partially covered through the Free tier or partial plan, and Fully covered on the Standard tier).

Selecting a subscription allows you to control what areas you want Security Center to monitor as shown in the following screenshot.

Identity

* **Centralized**/**unified** infrastructure and platform **security management service**
* **Natively embedded** in Azure services
* **Integrated** with **Azure Advisor**
* Two tiers
  + **Free** (Azure Defender OFF) – included in all Azure services, provides continuous assessments, security score, and actionable security recommendations
  + **Paid** (Azure Defender ON) – hybrid security, threat protection alerts, vulnerability scanning, just in time (JIT) VM access, etc.

**What is Azure Key Vault?**

* 5 minutes

Azure Key Vault is a *secret store*: a centralized cloud service for storing application secrets - configuration values like passwords and connection strings that must remain secure at all times. Key Vault helps you control your applications' secrets by keeping them in a single central location and providing secure access, permissions control, and access logging.

The main benefits of using Key Vault are:

* Separation of sensitive application information from other configuration and code, reducing risk of accidental leaks
* Restricted secret access with access policies tailored to the applications and individuals that need them
* Centralized secret storage, allowing required changes to happen in only one place
* Access logging and monitoring to help you understand how and when secrets are accessed

Secrets are stored in individual *vaults*, which are Azure resources used to group secrets together. Secret access and vault management is accomplished via a REST API, which is also supported by all of the Azure management tools as well as client libraries available for many popular languages. Every vault has a unique URL where its API is hosted.

**Important**

**Key Vault is designed to store configuration secrets for server applications.** It's not intended for storing data belonging to your app's users, and it shouldn't be used in the client-side part of an app. This is reflected in its performance characteristics, API, and cost model.

User data should be stored elsewhere, such as in an Azure SQL database with Transparent Data Encryption, or a storage account with Storage Service Encryption. Secrets used by your application to access those data stores can be kept in Key Vault.

**What is a secret in Key Vault?**

In Key Vault, a secret is a name-value pair of strings. Secret names must be 1-127 characters long, contain only alphanumeric characters and dashes, and must be unique within a vault. A secret value can be any UTF-8 string up to 25 KB in size.

**Tip**

Secret names don't need to be considered especially secret themselves. You can store them in your app's configuration if your implementation calls for it. The same is true of vault names and URLs.

**Note**

Key Vault supports two additional kinds of secrets beyond strings — *keys* and *certificates* — and provides useful functionality specific to their use cases. This module does not cover these features and concentrates on secret strings like passwords and connection strings.

**Vault authentication and permissions**

Azure Key Vault's API uses Azure Active Directory to authenticate users and applications. Vault access policies are based on *actions*, and are applied across an entire vault. For example, an application with **Get** (read secret values), **List** (list names of all secrets), and **Set** (create or update secret values) permissions to a vault is able to create secrets, list all secret names, and get and set all secret values in that vault.

*All* actions performed on a vault require authentication and authorization — there is no way to grant any kind of anonymous access.

**Tip**

When granting vault access to developers and apps, grant only the minimum set of permissions needed. Permissions restrictions help avoid accidents caused by code bugs and reduce the impact of stolen credentials or malicious code injected into your app.

Developers will usually only need **Get** and **List** permissions to a development-environment vault. Some engineers will need full permissions to change and add secrets when necessary.

For apps, often only **Get** permissions are required. Some apps may require **List** depending on the way the app is implemented. The app we'll implement in this module's exercise requires the **List** permission because of the technique it uses to read secrets from the vault.

**Vault authentication with managed identities for Azure resources**

Azure Key Vault uses **Azure Active Directory** to authenticate users and applications that try to access a vault. To grant our web application access to the vault, we first need to register our app with Azure Active Directory. Registering creates an identity for the app. Once the app has an identity, we can assign vault permissions to it.

Apps and users authenticate to Key Vault using an Azure Active Directory authentication token. Getting a token from Azure Active Directory requires a secret or certificate, because anyone with a token could use the application identity to access all of the secrets in the vault.

Our application secrets are secure in the vault, but we still need to keep a secret or certificate outside of the vault in order to access them! This problem is called the *bootstrapping problem*, and Azure has a solution for it.

**Managed identities for Azure resources**

Managed identities for Azure resources is an Azure feature that your app can use to access Key Vault and other Azure services without having to manage even a single secret outside of the vault. Using a managed identity is a simple and secure way to take advantage of Key Vault from your web app.

When you enable managed identity on your web app, Azure activates a separate token-granting REST service specifically for use by your app. Your app will request tokens from this service instead of directly from Azure Active Directory. Your app needs to use a secret to access this service, but that secret is injected into your app's environment variables by App Service when it starts up. You don't need to manage or store this secret value anywhere, and nothing outside of your app can access this secret or the managed identity token service endpoint.

Managed identities for Azure resources also registers your app in Azure Active Directory for you, and will delete the registration if you delete the web app or disable its managed identity.

Managed identities are available in all editions of Azure Active Directory, including the Free edition included with an Azure subscription. Using it in App Service has no extra cost and requires no configuration, and it can be enabled or disabled on an app at any time.

Enabling a managed identity for a web app requires only a single Azure CLI command with no configuration. We'll do it later on when we set up an App Service app and deploy to Azure. Before that, though, we're going to apply our knowledge of managed identities to write the code for our app.

**Explore the Azure Security Center service tiers**

Azure Security Center has two available tiers: free and standard. Both provide security policy, assessment, and recommendations and connection with partner solutions.

**Free tier**

The free tier is automatically enabled on all Azure subscriptions and provides security policy, continuous security assessment, and actionable security recommendations to help you protect your Azure resources. It monitors the most common app resources in Azure including:

* Compute resources such as VMs, Azure Functions and App Service
* Network access and endpoint security
* Data storage including Azure Storage, Redis cache for Azure, and Azure SQL
* Identity and access including Azure Key Vault
* IoT Hubs and resources

**Standard tier**

The standard tier extends the capabilities of the free tier to workloads running in private and other public clouds to provide unified security management and threat protection across all your hybrid cloud workloads.

The Standard tier adds advanced threat detection capabilities, using analytics and machine learning to identify attacks and zero-day exploits, access and application controls to reduce exposure to network attacks and malware, and more.

Migrating your Security Center subscription from the free tier to the standard tier enables the following features:

* **Security event collection**. Security Center collects logs in a central place so you can search and analyze them to identify important security events that may require your attention.
* **Network Map**. This feature allows you to visualize the topology of your Azure network infrastructure and the traffic to your Azure VMs. It also allows you to create filters by the severity level and recommendations.
* **Just-in-time VM access**. This allows admins to grant access to a VM for a defined period of time. Limiting access helps reduce exposure to outside attacks. This feature is especially useful if you’re working with an outside agency that needs to access your VM.
* **Adaptive application controls (application whitelisting)**. Adaptive application controls uses artificial intelligence to recommend applications to allow. This helps protect VMs by preventing malware and unauthorized software from being installed.
* **Regulatory compliance reports**. In the Regulatory compliance dashboard, you have a clear view of the status of all standard regulatory assessments within your environment.
* **File integrity monitoring**. This feature examines files and registries of operating system, application software, and others in Windows and Linux (computers and VMs) for changes that might indicate an attack.
* **Adaptive Network Hardening**. Adaptive Network Hardening provides recommendations to harden applied NSG rules. It uses machine learning algorithms that factors in actual traffic, known trusted configuration, threat intelligence, and other indicators of compromise, and then provides recommendations to allow traffic only from specific IP/port tuples.
* **Security alerts**. Security Center supports a variety of security alerts such as detection of potential distributed denial-of-service (DDOS) attacks. Just-in-time alerts gives you the chance to investigate evolving issues before they result in a service failure.
* **Threat intelligence**. This feature can help determine the nature of an attack, the attack point of origin, and more.
* **Workflow Automation**. Workflow automation is a collection of procedures that can be executed from Security Center once a certain playbook is triggered from selected alert. Workflow automation can help to automate and orchestrate your response to a specific security alert detected by Security Center.

**Switch to the Standard tier**

You can try the Standard tier for free for 30 days. This allows you to evaluate the additional features, see how your current environment will benefit from them, and decide whether they’re worth the investment.

You can enable Security Center on a per-subscription basis. Each subscription can choose what elements you want to enroll. Selecting the **Coverage** item under **POLICY & COMPLIANCE** will list all your available subscriptions (Not covered, Partially covered through the Free tier or partial plan, and Fully covered on the Standard tier).

Selecting a subscription allows you to control what areas you want Security Center to monitor as shown in the following screenshot.

**Customize Azure Security Center options**

You can customize various global Azure Security Center settings using the **Pricing & settings** option on the Security Center menu. These settings are established on a per-subscription basis so you have complete control over what is monitored, what data is collected, and where it's stored.

There are four areas you can influence.

* **Pricing tier**. Information about the available pricing tiers. This is the same information found on the **Coverage** page.
* **Threat detection**. This lets you control how Security Center integrates with other Microsoft security services such as Windows Defender.
* **Data Collection**. You can enable *auto-provisioning* to install a monitoring agent on all VMs in your subscription so Security Center can collect security information from Windows and Linux VMs.
* **Email notifications**. Security contact details and email notifications for high security alerts.

Here's a screenshot of the **Pricing & settings** screen with the **Threat detection** area selected.

**Data Collection** is particularly interesting. Each VM can store audit logs based on configured settings established during the VM creation process. You can collect two log sources from every VM in the subscription:

1. **Boot-time diagnostics**. This includes console output and screenshots of the virtual machine running on a host to help diagnose startup issues.
2. **OS guest diagnostics**. Get metrics every minute for your virtual machine. You can use them to create alerts and stay informed on your applications.

You can also activate these options when you create new VMs. Here's a screenshot of the **Management** tab while creating a new Windows-based VM with the Azure portal that shows the Azure Security Center options being set:

By default, a Storage Account will be selected (or created) to hold the logs, but you can customize that on a per-VM basis as needed.

With this collected data, Azure Security Center can start making observations about how each of your configured workloads match up to your security policy.

# Centralized policy management with Azure Security Center

Policy-based management can streamline IT operations and help to protect the organization by enforcing well-designed policies. Azure Policy lets you define requirements for your Azure subscriptions and tailor them to your type of workload or the sensitivity of your data.

Azure Security Center is fully integrated with Azure Policy. Security Center can monitor policy compliance across all of your subscriptions using a default set of security policies. A security policy defines the set of controls that are recommended for resources within the specified subscription or resource group. These security policies define the desired configuration of your workloads and help to ensure compliance with company or regulatory security requirements. These defaults can be customized and defined to match your specific organizational needs.

Here are a few of the built-in security policies that Security Center monitors:

* Secure transfer to storage accounts should be enabled
* Azure AD administrator for SQL server should be provisioned
* Client authentication should use Azure Active Directory
* Diagnostics logs in Key Vault should be enabled
* System updates should be installed on your machines
* Audit missing blob encryption for storage accounts
* Just-In-Time network access control should be applied on virtual machines

By default, all security policies are turned on for each monitored subscription. Security policies and recommendations are tied to each other. If you enable a security policy, such as OS vulnerabilities, that enables recommendations for that policy. In Security Center, you define policies for your Azure subscriptions or resource groups according to your company’s security needs and the types of applications or sensitivity of data in each subscription.

For example, resources used for development or testing might have different security requirements than resources used for production applications. Likewise, applications that use regulated data, like personally identifiable information (PII), might require a higher level of security. Security policies that are enabled in Azure Security Center drive security recommendations and monitoring to help you identify potential vulnerabilities and mitigate threats.

Policies are inherited from the subscription down to the resource groups. However, you can control the security policies individually at the resource group level.

**Note**

To modify a security policy at the subscription level or resource group level, you need to be an Owner or Contributor for that subscription.

## Working with security policies

You can view the active security policies through the Security Center dashboard through the Security policy view:

Two organizational groups are shown in the image above: management groups and subscriptions. These are taken directly from Azure policy. Selecting one of these elements allows you to drill into the details for that group or subscription.

In the above image, you can see that **System updates** is set to **AuditIfNotExists**. In this subscription, under the free tier, that means all virtual machines (VMs) will be audited to ensure they have the latest security updates applied. Any VMs that fail this check will generate an audit event.

You can collapse each group to see other policy areas.

In the above image, you can see that the security policy **Virtual machines should be associated with a Network Security Group** is **Disabled**.

### Changing Azure policy

Owners and security administrators can edit the default security policy for each of the shown Azure subscriptions and management groups through Azure Policy. The Azure portal is the easiest way to make changes to policy, but you can also leverage a command-line interface (Azure CLI or Azure PowerShell) or the programmatic REST API.

Let's examine some of the recommendations Azure Security Center makes about your resources using these policy definitions

# Monitor your security status with Security Center recommendations

The assigned security policies create security recommendations. These recommendations can help to identify the current security state of your created workloads in Azure. Security Center reviews your security recommendations across all workloads, uses algorithms to determine how critical each recommendation is, and calculates a **Secure Score** which is displayed on the Overview page. The recommendation Secure Score is a calculation based on the ratio between your healthy resources and your total resources.

You can select the **Review your secure score >** link to get more information on each subscription and the recommendations to improve your score.

Here you can identify the severity of the issue, and get help on correcting each violation. In some cases, Security Center can even fix the issue for you through the **1-Click Fix** tag as shown above.

## Viewing recommendations by category

Under the **RESOURCE SECURITY HYGIENE** header in Security Center you can examine specific recommendations based on category. For example, the **Compute & apps** section of Azure Security Center provides recommendations for Azure VMs, non-Azure computers (standard-tier), App Services, Containers, and VM scale sets.

As in the secure score screen, some recommendations can be fixed directly from the Security Center dashboard while other issues require you to perform some steps on the resource. For example, in the above image, the **System updates should be installed on your machines** will only give you the list of computers that need updates. To address this issue you would use a solution such as Windows Update Services (WSUS).

Each recommendation can be selected to get more details. For issues which need manual remediation, you will get a list of steps to perform. For example, selecting the **Virtual machines should be migrated to new Azure Resource Manager resources** will show the following screen:

VMs are particularly important to protect as they often have a broader surface attack than other compute resources. Azure Security Center helps you safeguard your virtual machines in Azure by providing visibility into the security settings on each VM. As shown earlier, ASC can examine OS-level settings through the use of a monitor service that it installs into each Windows and Linux VM. With this feature enabled, Security Center can provide several safeguards including:

* OS security settings with the recommended configuration rules
* System security updates and critical updates that are missing
* Endpoint protection recommendations
* Disk encryption validation
* Vulnerability assessment and remediation
* Threat detection

### Other categories

Security Center lists similar sections for Networking, IoT Hubs, Data & storage, Identity & access, and other security products such as the Next Generation Firewall and Web Application Firewall.

Try selecting each item in the **RESOURCE SECURITY HYGIENE** section to see examples of recommendations Security Center makes for each area.

### Disabling security recommendations

It's recommended to leave all the security policies enabled, however sometimes a recommendation will be generated that isn't relevant to your environment. You can turn it off by disabling the security policy that is sending the recommendation.

1. In the **Policy & Compliance** section, select **Security policy**.
2. Select the subscription or management group that shouldn't show the recommendation.

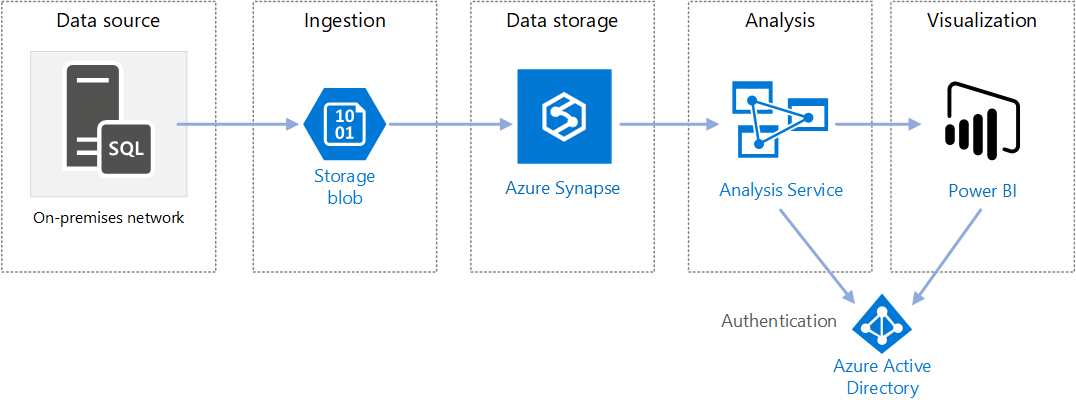
**Note**

Remember that a management group applies its policies to its subscriptions. Therefore, if you disable a subscription's policy, and the subscription belongs to a management group that still uses the same policy, then you will continue to receive the policy recommendations. The policy will still be applied from the management level and the recommendations will still be generated.

1. Select the assigned policy:
2. In the **PARAMETERS** section, locate the policy that sends the recommendation you want to disable, and from the dropdown list, select **Disabled**.
3. Select **Save** to persist your changes. The change can take up to 12 hours to replicate through the Azure infrastructure.

**DATA WAREHOUSE**

A data warehouse is a centralized repository of integrated data from one or more disparate sources. Data warehouses store current and historical data and are used for reporting and analysis of the data.



To move data into a data warehouse, data is periodically extracted from various sources that contain important business information. As the data is moved, it can be formatted, cleaned, validated, summarized, and reorganized. Alternatively, the data can be stored in the lowest level of detail, with aggregated views provided in the warehouse for reporting. In either case, the data warehouse becomes a permanent data store for reporting, analysis, and business intelligence (BI).

**Data warehouse architectures**

The following reference architectures show end-to-end data warehouse architectures on Azure:

* [Enterprise BI in Azure with Azure Synapse Analytics](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/reference-architectures/data/enterprise-bi-synapse). This reference architecture implements an extract, load, and transform (ELT) pipeline that moves data from an on-premises SQL Server database into Azure Synapse.
* [Automated enterprise BI with Azure Synapse and Azure Data Factory](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/reference-architectures/data/enterprise-bi-adf). This reference architecture shows an ELT pipeline with incremental loading, automated using Azure Data Factory.

**When to use this solution**

Choose a data warehouse when you need to turn massive amounts of data from operational systems into a format that is easy to understand. Data warehouses don't need to follow the same terse data structure you may be using in your OLTP databases. You can use column names that make sense to business users and analysts, restructure the schema to simplify relationships, and consolidate several tables into one. These steps help guide users who need to create reports and analyze the data in BI systems, without the help of a database administrator (DBA) or data developer.

Consider using a data warehouse when you need to keep historical data separate from the source transaction systems for performance reasons. Data warehouses make it easy to access historical data from multiple locations, by providing a centralized location using common formats, keys, and data models.

Because data warehouses are optimized for read access, generating reports is faster than using the source transaction system for reporting.

Other benefits include:

* The data warehouse can store historical data from multiple sources, representing a single source of truth.
* You can improve data quality by cleaning up data as it is imported into the data warehouse.
* Reporting tools don't compete with the transactional systems for query processing cycles. A data warehouse allows the transactional system to focus on handling writes, while the data warehouse satisfies the majority of read requests.
* A data warehouse can consolidate data from different software.
* Data mining tools can find hidden patterns in the data using automatic methodologies.
* Data warehouses make it easier to provide secure access to authorized users, while restricting access to others. Business users don't need access to the source data, removing a potential attack vector.
* Data warehouses make it easier to create business intelligence solutions, such as [OLAP cubes](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/relational-data/online-analytical-processing).

**Challenges**

Properly configuring a data warehouse to fit the needs of your business can bring some of the following challenges:

* Committing the time required to properly model your business concepts. Data warehouses are information driven. You must standardize business-related terms and common formats, such as currency and dates. You also need to restructure the schema in a way that makes sense to business users but still ensures accuracy of data aggregates and relationships.
* Planning and setting up your data orchestration. Consider how to copy data from the source transactional system to the data warehouse, and when to move historical data from operational data stores into the warehouse.
* Maintaining or improving data quality by cleaning the data as it is imported into the warehouse.

**Data warehousing in Azure**

You may have one or more sources of data, whether from customer transactions or business applications. This data is traditionally stored in one or more [OLTP](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/relational-data/online-transaction-processing) databases. The data could be persisted in other storage mediums such as network shares, Azure Storage Blobs, or a data lake. The data could also be stored by the data warehouse itself or in a relational database such as Azure SQL Database. The purpose of the analytical data store layer is to satisfy queries issued by analytics and reporting tools against the data warehouse. In Azure, this analytical store capability can be met with Azure Synapse, or with Azure HDInsight using Hive or Interactive Query. In addition, you will need some level of orchestration to move or copy data from data storage to the data warehouse, which can be done using Azure Data Factory or Oozie on Azure HDInsight.

There are several options for implementing a data warehouse in Azure, depending on your needs. The following lists are broken into two categories, [symmetric multiprocessing](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Symmetric_multiprocessing) (SMP) and [massively parallel processing](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massively_parallel) (MPP).

SMP:

* [Azure SQL Database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/sql-database)
* [SQL Server in a virtual machine](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/sql-server/sql-server-technical-documentation)

MPP:

* [Azure Synapse Analytics (formerly Azure Data Warehouse)](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/sql-data-warehouse/sql-data-warehouse-overview-what-is)
* [Apache Hive on HDInsight](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/hdinsight/hadoop/hdinsight-use-hive)
* [Interactive Query (Hive LLAP) on HDInsight](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/hdinsight/interactive-query/apache-interactive-query-get-started)

As a general rule, SMP-based warehouses are best suited for small to medium data sets (up to 4-100 TB), while MPP is often used for big data. The delineation between small/medium and big data partly has to do with your organization's definition and supporting infrastructure. (See [Choosing an OLTP data store](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/relational-data/online-transaction-processing#scalability-capabilities).)

Beyond data sizes, the type of workload pattern is likely to be a greater determining factor. For example, complex queries may be too slow for an SMP solution, and require an MPP solution instead. MPP-based systems usually have a performance penalty with small data sizes, because of how jobs are distributed and consolidated across nodes. If your data sizes already exceed 1 TB and are expected to continually grow, consider selecting an MPP solution. However, if your data sizes are smaller, but your workloads are exceeding the available resources of your SMP solution, then MPP may be your best option as well.

The data accessed or stored by your data warehouse could come from a number of data sources, including a data lake, such as [Azure Data Lake Storage](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/data-lake-store). For a video session that compares the different strengths of MPP services that can use Azure Data Lake, see [Azure Data Lake and Azure Data Warehouse: Applying Modern Practices to Your App](https://azure.microsoft.com/resources/videos/build-2016-azure-data-lake-and-azure-data-warehouse-applying-modern-practices-to-your-app).

SMP systems are characterized by a single instance of a relational database management system sharing all resources (CPU/Memory/Disk). You can scale up an SMP system. For SQL Server running on a VM, you can scale up the VM size. For Azure SQL Database, you can scale up by selecting a different service tier.

MPP systems can be scaled out by adding more compute nodes (which have their own CPU, memory, and I/O subsystems). There are physical limitations to scaling up a server, at which point scaling out is more desirable, depending on the workload. However, the differences in querying, modeling, and data partitioning mean that MPP solutions require a different skill set.

When deciding which SMP solution to use, see [A closer look at Azure SQL Database and SQL Server on Azure VMs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/sql-database/sql-database-paas-vs-sql-server-iaas#business-motivations-for-choosing-databases-managed-instances-or-sql-virtual-machines).

Azure Synapse (formerly Azure SQL Data Warehouse) can also be used for small and medium datasets, where the workload is compute and memory intensive. Read more about Azure Synapse patterns and common scenarios:

* [Azure SQL Data Warehouse Workload Patterns and Anti-Patterns](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/relational-data/data-warehousing#data-warehousing-in-azure)
* [Azure SQL Data Warehouse loading patterns and strategies](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/archive/blogs/sqlcat/azure-sql-data-warehouse-loading-patterns-and-strategies)
* [Migrating data to Azure SQL Data Warehouse in practice](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/archive/blogs/sqlcat/migrating-data-to-azure-sql-data-warehouse-in-practice)
* [Common ISV application patterns using Azure SQL Data Warehouse](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/archive/blogs/sqlcat/common-isv-application-patterns-using-azure-sql-data-warehouse)

**Key selection criteria**

To narrow the choices, start by answering these questions:

* Do you want a managed service rather than managing your own servers?
* Are you working with extremely large data sets or highly complex, long-running queries? If yes, consider an MPP option.
* For a large data set, is the data source structured or unstructured? Unstructured data may need to be processed in a big data environment such as Spark on HDInsight, Azure Databricks, Hive LLAP on HDInsight, or Azure Data Lake Analytics. All of these can serve as ELT (Extract, Load, Transform) and ETL (Extract, Transform, Load) engines. They can output the processed data into structured data, making it easier to load into Azure Synapse or one of the other options. For structured data, Azure Synapse has a performance tier called Optimized for Compute, for compute-intensive workloads requiring ultra-high performance.
* Do you want to separate your historical data from your current, operational data? If so, select one of the options where [orchestration](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/technology-choices/pipeline-orchestration-data-movement) is required. These are standalone warehouses optimized for heavy read access, and are best suited as a separate historical data store.
* Do you need to integrate data from several sources, beyond your OLTP data store? If so, consider options that easily integrate multiple data sources.
* Do you have a multitenancy requirement? If so, Azure Synapse is not ideal for this requirement. For more information, see [Azure Synapse Patterns and Anti-Patterns](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/relational-data/data-warehousing#data-warehousing-in-azure).
* Do you prefer a relational data store? If so, choose an option with a relational data store, but also note that you can use a tool like PolyBase to query non-relational data stores if needed. If you decide to use PolyBase, however, run performance tests against your unstructured data sets for your workload.
* Do you have real-time reporting requirements? If you require rapid query response times on high volumes of singleton inserts, choose an option that supports real-time reporting.
* Do you need to support a large number of concurrent users and connections? The ability to support a number of concurrent users/connections depends on several factors.
  + For Azure SQL Database, refer to the [documented resource limits](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/sql-database/sql-database-resource-limits) based on your service tier.
  + SQL Server allows a maximum of 32,767 user connections. When running on a VM, performance will depend on the VM size and other factors.
  + Azure Synapse has limits on concurrent queries and concurrent connections. For more information, see [Concurrency and workload management in Azure Synapse](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/sql-data-warehouse/sql-data-warehouse-develop-concurrency). Consider using complementary services, such as [Azure Analysis Services](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/analysis-services/analysis-services-overview), to overcome limits in Azure Synapse.
* What sort of workload do you have? In general, MPP-based warehouse solutions are best suited for analytical, batch-oriented workloads. If your workloads are transactional by nature, with many small read/write operations or multiple row-by-row operations, consider using one of the SMP options. One exception to this guideline is when using stream processing on an HDInsight cluster, such as Spark Streaming, and storing the data within a Hive table.

**DATA LAKES**

A data lake is a storage repository that holds a large amount of data in its native, raw format. Data lake stores are optimized for scaling to terabytes and petabytes of data. The data typically comes from multiple heterogeneous sources, and may be structured, semi-structured, or unstructured. The idea with a data lake is to store everything in its original, untransformed state. This approach differs from a traditional [data warehouse](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/relational-data/data-warehousing), which transforms and processes the data at the time of ingestion.

Advantages of a data lake:

* Data is never thrown away, because the data is stored in its raw format. This is especially useful in a big data environment, when you may not know in advance what insights are available from the data.
* Users can explore the data and create their own queries.
* May be faster than traditional ETL tools.
* More flexible than a data warehouse, because it can store unstructured and semi-structured data.

A complete data lake solution consists of both storage and processing. Data lake storage is designed for fault-tolerance, infinite scalability, and high-throughput ingestion of data with varying shapes and sizes. Data lake processing involves one or more processing engines built with these goals in mind, and can operate on data stored in a data lake at scale.

**When to use a data lake**

Typical uses for a data lake include [data exploration](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/scenarios/interactive-data-exploration), data analytics, and machine learning.

A data lake can also act as the data source for a data warehouse. With this approach, the raw data is ingested into the data lake and then transformed into a structured queryable format. Typically this transformation uses an [ELT](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/data-guide/relational-data/etl#extract-load-and-transform-elt) (extract-load-transform) pipeline, where the data is ingested and transformed in place. Source data that is already relational may go directly into the data warehouse, using an ETL process, skipping the data lake.

Data lake stores are often used in event streaming or IoT scenarios, because they can persist large amounts of relational and nonrelational data without transformation or schema definition. They are built to handle high volumes of small writes at low latency, and are optimized for massive throughput.

**Challenges**

* Lack of a schema or descriptive metadata can make the data hard to consume or query.
* Lack of semantic consistency across the data can make it challenging to perform analysis on the data, unless users are highly skilled at data analytics.
* It can be hard to guarantee the quality of the data going into the data lake.
* Without proper governance, access control and privacy issues can be problems. What information is going into the data lake, who can access that data, and for what uses?
* A data lake may not be the best way to integrate data that is already relational.
* By itself, a data lake does not provide integrated or holistic views across the organization.
* A data lake may become a dumping ground for data that is never actually analyzed or mined for insights.

**Relevant Azure services**

* [Data Lake Store](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/data-lake-store/) is a hyperscale, Hadoop-compatible repository.
* [Data Lake Analytics](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/data-lake-analytics/) is an on-demand analytics job service to simplify big data analytics.

**AZURE POLICY**

Azure Policy helps to enforce organizational standards and to assess compliance at-scale. Through its compliance dashboard, it provides an aggregated view to evaluate the overall state of the environment, with the ability to drill down to the per-resource, per-policy granularity. It also helps to bring your resources to compliance through bulk remediation for existing resources and automatic remediation for new resources.

Common use cases for Azure Policy include implementing governance for resource consistency, regulatory compliance, security, cost, and management. Policy definitions for these common use cases are already available in your Azure environment as built-ins to help you get started.

All Azure Policy data and objects are encrypted at rest. For more information, see [Azure data encryption at rest](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/security/fundamentals/encryption-atrest).

## Overview

Azure Policy evaluates resources in Azure by comparing the properties of those resources to business rules. These business rules, described in [JSON format](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/definition-structure), are known as [policy definitions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/overview#policy-definition). To simplify management, several business rules can be grouped together to form a [policy initiative](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/overview#initiative-definition) (sometimes called a policySet). Once your business rules have been formed, the policy definition or initiative is [assigned](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/overview#assignments) to any scope of resources that Azure supports, such as [management groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/management-groups/overview), subscriptions, [resource groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/overview#resource-groups), or individual resources. The assignment applies to all resources within the [Resource Manager scope](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/overview#understand-scope) of that assignment. Subscopes can be excluded, if necessary. For more information, see [Scope in Azure Policy](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/scope).

Azure Policy uses a [JSON format](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/definition-structure) to form the logic the evaluation uses to determine if a resource is compliant or not. Definitions include metadata and the policy rule. The defined rule can use functions, parameters, logical operators, conditions, and property [aliases](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/definition-structure#aliases) to match exactly the scenario you want. The policy rule determines which resources in the scope of the assignment get evaluated.

### Understand evaluation outcomes

Resources are evaluated at specific times during the resource lifecycle, the policy assignment lifecycle, and for regular ongoing compliance evaluation. The following are the times or events that cause a resource to be evaluated:

* A resource is created, updated, or deleted in a scope with a policy assignment.
* A policy or initiative is newly assigned to a scope.
* A policy or initiative already assigned to a scope is updated.
* During the standard compliance evaluation cycle, which occurs once every 24 hours.

For detailed information about when and how policy evaluation happens, see [Evaluation triggers](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/how-to/get-compliance-data#evaluation-triggers).

### Control the response to an evaluation

Business rules for handling non-compliant resources vary widely between organizations. Examples of how an organization wants the platform to respond to a non-complaint resource include:

* Deny the resource change
* Log the change to the resource
* Alter the resource before the change
* Alter the resource after the change
* Deploy related compliant resources

Azure Policy makes each of these business responses possible through the application of [effects](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/effects). Effects are set in the **policy rule** portion of the [policy definition](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/definition-structure).

### Remediate non-compliant resources

While these effects primarily affect a resource when the resource is created or updated, Azure Policy also supports dealing with existing non-compliant resources without needing to alter that resource. For more information about making existing resources compliant, see [remediating resources](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/how-to/remediate-resources).

### Video overview

The following overview of Azure Policy is from Build 2018. For slides or video download, visit [Govern your Azure environment through Azure Policy](https://channel9.msdn.com/events/Build/2018/THR2030) on Channel 9.

## Getting started

### Azure Policy and Azure RBAC

There are a few key differences between Azure Policy and Azure role-based access control (Azure RBAC). Azure Policy evaluates state by examining properties on resources that are represented in Resource Manager and properties of some Resource Providers. Azure Policy doesn't restrict actions (also called operations). Azure Policy ensures that resource state is compliant to your business rules without concern for who made the change or who has permission to make a change.

Azure RBAC focuses on managing user [actions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/resource-provider-operations) at different scopes. If control of an action is required, then Azure RBAC is the correct tool to use. Even if an individual has access to perform an action, if the result is a non-compliant resource, Azure Policy still blocks the create or update.

The combination of Azure RBAC and Azure Policy provides full scope control in Azure.

### Azure RBAC permissions in Azure Policy

Azure Policy has several permissions, known as operations, in two Resource Providers:

* [Microsoft.Authorization](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/resource-provider-operations#microsoftauthorization)
* [Microsoft.PolicyInsights](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/resource-provider-operations#microsoftpolicyinsights)

Many Built-in roles grant permission to Azure Policy resources. The **Resource Policy Contributor** role includes most Azure Policy operations. **Owner** has full rights. Both **Contributor** and **Reader** have access to all read Azure Policy operations. **Contributor** may trigger resource remediation, but can't create definitions or assignments. **User Access Administrator** is necessary to grant the managed identity on **deployIfNotExists** or **modify** assignments necessary permissions.

If none of the Built-in roles have the permissions required, create a [custom role](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/custom-roles).

**Note**

The managed identity of a **deployIfNotExists** or **modify** policy assignment needs enough permissions to create or update targetted resources. For more information, see [**Configure policy definitions for remediation**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/how-to/remediate-resources#configure-policy-definition).

### Resources covered by Azure Policy

Azure Policy evaluates all resources in Azure and Arc enabled resources. For certain resource providers such as [Guest Configuration](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/guest-configuration), [Azure Kubernetes Service](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/aks/intro-kubernetes), and [Azure Key Vault](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/key-vault/general/overview), there's a deeper integration for managing settings and objects. To find out more, see [Resource Provider modes](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/definition-structure).

### Recommendations for managing policies

Here are a few pointers and tips to keep in mind:

* Start with an audit effect instead of a deny effect to track impact of your policy definition on the resources in your environment. If you have scripts already in place to autoscale your applications, setting a deny effect may hinder such automation tasks already in place.
* Consider organizational hierarchies when creating definitions and assignments. We recommend creating definitions at higher levels such as the management group or subscription level. Then, create the assignment at the next child level. If you create a definition at a management group, the assignment can be scoped down to a subscription or resource group within that management group.
* We recommend creating and assigning initiative definitions even for a single policy definition. For example, you have policy definition policyDefA and create it under initiative definition initiativeDefC. If you create another policy definition later for policyDefB with goals similar to policyDefA, you can add it under initiativeDefC and track them together.
* Once you've created an initiative assignment, policy definitions added to the initiative also become part of that initiative's assignments.
* When an initiative assignment is evaluated, all policies within the initiative are also evaluated. If you need to evaluate a policy individually, it's better to not include it in an initiative.

## Azure Policy objects

### Policy definition

The journey of creating and implementing a policy in Azure Policy begins with creating a policy definition. Every policy definition has conditions under which it's enforced. And, it has a defined effect that takes place if the conditions are met.

In Azure Policy, we offer several built-in policies that are available by default. For example:

* **Allowed Storage Account SKUs** (Deny): Determines if a storage account being deployed is within a set of SKU sizes. Its effect is to deny all storage accounts that don't adhere to the set of defined SKU sizes.
* **Allowed Resource Type** (Deny): Defines the resource types that you can deploy. Its effect is to deny all resources that aren't part of this defined list.
* **Allowed Locations** (Deny): Restricts the available locations for new resources. Its effect is used to enforce your geo-compliance requirements.
* **Allowed Virtual Machine SKUs** (Deny): Specifies a set of virtual machine SKUs that you can deploy.
* **Add a tag to resources** (Modify): Applies a required tag and its default value if it's not specified by the deploy request.
* **Not allowed resource types** (Deny): Prevents a list of resource types from being deployed.

To implement these policy definitions (both built-in and custom definitions), you'll need to assign them. You can assign any of these policies through the Azure portal, PowerShell, or Azure CLI.

Policy evaluation happens with several different actions, such as policy assignment or policy updates. For a complete list, see [Policy evaluation triggers](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/how-to/get-compliance-data#evaluation-triggers).

To learn more about the structures of policy definitions, review [Policy Definition Structure](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/definition-structure).

Policy parameters help simplify your policy management by reducing the number of policy definitions you must create. You can define parameters when creating a policy definition to make it more generic. Then you can reuse that policy definition for different scenarios. You do so by passing in different values when assigning the policy definition. For example, specifying one set of locations for a subscription.

Parameters are defined when creating a policy definition. When a parameter is defined, it's given a name and optionally given a value. For example, you could define a parameter for a policy titled location. Then you can give it different values such as EastUS or WestUS when assigning a policy.

For more information about policy parameters, see [Definition structure - Parameters](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/definition-structure#parameters).

### Initiative definition

An initiative definition is a collection of policy definitions that are tailored towards achieving a singular overarching goal. Initiative definitions simplify managing and assigning policy definitions. They simplify by grouping a set of policies as one single item. For example, you could create an initiative titled **Enable Monitoring in Azure Security Center**, with a goal to monitor all the available security recommendations in your Azure Security Center.

**Note**

The SDK, such as Azure CLI and Azure PowerShell, use properties and parameters named **PolicySet** to refer to initiatives.

Under this initiative, you would have policy definitions such as:

* **Monitor unencrypted SQL Database in Security Center** – For monitoring unencrypted SQL databases and servers.
* **Monitor OS vulnerabilities in Security Center** – For monitoring servers that don't satisfy the configured baseline.
* **Monitor missing Endpoint Protection in Security Center** – For monitoring servers without an installed endpoint protection agent.

Like policy parameters, initiative parameters help simplify initiative management by reducing redundancy. Initiative parameters are parameters being used by the policy definitions within the initiative.

For example, take a scenario where you have an initiative definition - **initiativeC**, with policy definitions **policyA** and **policyB** each expecting a different type of parameter:

| **TABLE 1** | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Policy** | **Name of parameter** | **Type of parameter** | **Note** |
| policyA | allowedLocations | array | This parameter expects a list of strings for a value since the parameter type has been defined as an array |
| policyB | allowedSingleLocation | string | This parameter expects one word for a value since the parameter type has been defined as a string |

In this scenario, when defining the initiative parameters for **initiativeC**, you have three options:

* Use the parameters of the policy definitions within this initiative: In this example, allowedLocations and allowedSingleLocation become initiative parameters for **initiativeC**.
* Provide values to the parameters of the policy definitions within this initiative definition. In this example, you can provide a list of locations to **policyA**'s parameter – **allowedLocations** and **policyB**'s parameter – **allowedSingleLocation**. You can also provide values when assigning this initiative.
* Provide a list of value options that can be used when assigning this initiative. When you assign this initiative, the inherited parameters from the policy definitions within the initiative, can only have values from this provided list.

When creating value options in an initiative definition, you're unable to input a different value during the initiative assignment because it's not part of the list.

To learn more about the structures of initiative definitions, review [Initiative Definition Structure](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/initiative-definition-structure).

### Assignments

An assignment is a policy definition or initiative that has been assigned to take place within a specific scope. This scope could range from a [management group](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/management-groups/overview) to an individual resource. The term scope refers to all the resources, resource groups, subscriptions, or management groups that the definition is assigned to. Assignments are inherited by all child resources. This design means that a definition applied to a resource group is also applied to resources in that resource group. However, you can exclude a subscope from the assignment.

For example, at the subscription scope, you can assign a definition that prevents the creation of networking resources. You could exclude a resource group in that subscription that is intended for networking infrastructure. You then grant access to this networking resource group to users that you trust with creating networking resources.

In another example, you might want to assign a resource type allow list definition at the management group level. Then you assign a more permissive policy (allowing more resource types) on a child management group or even directly on subscriptions. However, this example wouldn't work because Azure Policy is an explicit deny system. Instead, you need to exclude the child management group or subscription from the management group-level assignment. Then, assign the more permissive definition on the child management group or subscription level. If any assignment results in a resource getting denied, then the only way to allow the resource is to modify the denying assignment.

For more information on setting assignments through the portal, see [Create a policy assignment to identify non-compliant resources in your Azure environment](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/assign-policy-portal). Steps for [PowerShell](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/assign-policy-powershell) and [Azure CLI](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/assign-policy-azurecli) are also available. For information on the assignment structure, see [Assignments Structure](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/concepts/assignment-structure).

## Maximum count of Azure Policy objects

There's a maximum count for each object type for Azure Policy. For definitions, an entry of Scope means the [management group](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/management-groups/overview) or subscription. For assignments and exemptions, an entry of Scope means the [management group](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/management-groups/overview), subscription, resource group, or individual resource.

| **MAXIMUM COUNT OF AZURE POLICY OBJECTS** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Where** | **What** | **Maximum count** |
| Scope | Policy definitions | 500 |
| Scope | Initiative definitions | 200 |
| Tenant | Initiative definitions | 2,500 |
| Scope | Policy or initiative assignments | 200 |
| Scope | Exemptions | 1000 |
| Policy definition | Parameters | 20 |
| Initiative definition | Policies | 1000 |
| Initiative definition | Parameters | 100 |
| Policy or initiative assignments | Exclusions (notScopes) | 400 |
| Policy rule | Nested conditionals | 512 |
| Remediation task | Resources | 500 |

**AZURE SQL DATABASE**

Azure SQL Database is a fully managed platform as a service (PaaS) database engine that handles most of the database management functions such as upgrading, patching, backups, and monitoring without user involvement. Azure SQL Database is always running on the latest stable version of the SQL Server database engine and patched OS with 99.99% availability. PaaS capabilities that are built into Azure SQL Database enable you to focus on the domain-specific database administration and optimization activities that are critical for your business.

With Azure SQL Database, you can create a highly available and high-performance data storage layer for the applications and solutions in Azure. SQL Database can be the right choice for a variety of modern cloud applications because it enables you to process both relational data and [non-relational structures](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/multi-model-features), such as graphs, JSON, spatial, and XML.

Azure SQL Database is based on the latest stable version of the [Microsoft SQL Server database engine](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/sql-server/sql-server-technical-documentation?toc=%252fazure%252fsql-database%252ftoc.json). You can use advanced query processing features, such as [high-performance in-memory technologies](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/in-memory-oltp-overview) and [intelligent query processing](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/performance/intelligent-query-processing?toc=%252fazure%252fsql-database%252ftoc.json). In fact, the newest capabilities of SQL Server are released first to SQL Database, and then to SQL Server itself. You get the newest SQL Server capabilities with no overhead for patching or upgrading, tested across millions of databases.

SQL Database enables you to easily define and scale performance within two different purchasing models: a [vCore-based purchasing model](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/service-tiers-vcore) and a [DTU-based purchasing model](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/service-tiers-dtu). SQL Database is a fully managed service that has built-in high availability, backups, and other common maintenance operations. Microsoft handles all patching and updating of the SQL and operating system code. You don't have to manage the underlying infrastructure.

If you're new to Azure SQL Database, check out the Azure SQL Database Overview video from our in-depth [Azure SQL video series](https://channel9.msdn.com/Series/Azure-SQL-for-Beginners?WT.mc_id=azuresql4beg_azuresql-ch9-niner):

## Deployment models

Azure SQL Database provides the following deployment options for a database:

* [Single database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/single-database-overview) represents a fully managed, isolated database. You might use this option if you have modern cloud applications and microservices that need a single reliable data source. A single database is similar to a [contained database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/databases/contained-databases?toc=%252fazure%252fsql-database%252ftoc.json) in the [SQL Server database engine](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/sql-server/sql-server-technical-documentation?toc=%252fazure%252fsql-database%252ftoc.json).
* [Elastic pool](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/elastic-pool-overview) is a collection of [single databases](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/single-database-overview) with a shared set of resources, such as CPU or memory. Single databases can be moved into and out of an elastic pool.

**Important**

To understand the feature differences between SQL Database and SQL Server, as well as the differences among different Azure SQL Database options, see [**SQL Database features**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/features-comparison).

SQL Database delivers predictable performance with multiple resource types, service tiers, and compute sizes. It provides dynamic scalability with no downtime, built-in intelligent optimization, global scalability and availability, and advanced security options. These capabilities allow you to focus on rapid app development and accelerating your time-to-market, rather than on managing virtual machines and infrastructure. SQL Database is currently in 38 datacenters around the world, so you can run your database in a datacenter near you.

## Scalable performance and pools

You can define the amount of resources assigned.

* With single databases, each database is isolated from others and is portable. Each has its own guaranteed amount of compute, memory, and storage resources. The amount of the resources assigned to the database is dedicated to that database, and isn't shared with other databases in Azure. You can dynamically [scale single database resources](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/single-database-scale) up and down. The single database option provides different compute, memory, and storage resources for different needs. For example, you can get 1 to 80 vCores, or 32 GB to 4 TB. The [hyperscale service tier](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/service-tier-hyperscale) for single databases enables you to scale to 100 TB, with fast backup and restore capabilities.
* With elastic pools, you can assign resources that are shared by all databases in the pool. You can create a new database, or move the existing single databases into a resource pool to maximize the use of resources and save money. This option also gives you the ability to dynamically [scale elastic pool resources](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/elastic-pool-scale) up and down.

You can build your first app on a small, single database at a low cost per month in the general-purpose service tier. You can then change its service tier manually or programmatically at any time to the business-critical service tier, to meet the needs of your solution. You can adjust performance without downtime to your app or to your customers. Dynamic scalability enables your database to transparently respond to rapidly changing resource requirements. You pay for only the resources that you need when you need them.

Dynamic scalability is different from autoscale. Autoscale is when a service scales automatically based on criteria, whereas dynamic scalability allows for manual scaling without downtime. The single database option supports manual dynamic scalability, but not autoscale. For a more automatic experience, consider using elastic pools, which allow databases to share resources in a pool based on individual database needs. Another option is to use scripts that can help automate scalability for a single database. For an example, see [Use PowerShell to monitor and scale a single database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/scripts/monitor-and-scale-database-powershell).

### Purchasing models

SQL Database offers the following purchasing models:

* The [vCore-based purchasing model](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/service-tiers-vcore) lets you choose the number of vCores, the amount of memory, and the amount and speed of storage. The vCore-based purchasing model also allows you to use [Azure Hybrid Benefit for SQL Server](https://azure.microsoft.com/pricing/hybrid-benefit/) to gain cost savings. For more information about the Azure Hybrid Benefit, see the "Frequently asked questions" section later in this article.
* The [DTU-based purchasing model](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/service-tiers-dtu) offers a blend of compute, memory, and I/O resources in three service tiers, to support light to heavy database workloads. Compute sizes within each tier provide a different mix of these resources, to which you can add additional storage resources.
* The [serverless model](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/serverless-tier-overview) automatically scales compute based on workload demand, and bills for the amount of compute used per second. The serverless compute tier also automatically pauses databases during inactive periods when only storage is billed, and automatically resumes databases when activity returns.

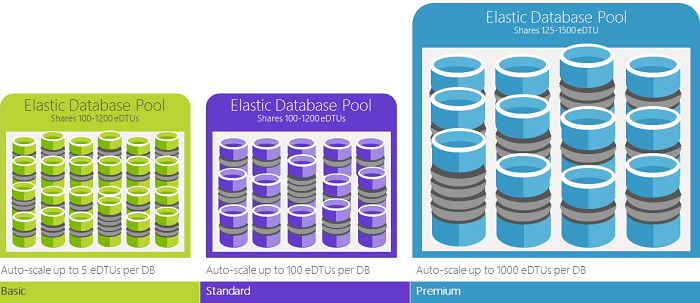
### Service tiers

Azure SQL Database offers three service tiers that are designed for different types of applications:

* [General Purpose/Standard](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/service-tier-general-purpose) service tier designed for common workloads. It offers budget-oriented balanced compute and storage options.
* [Business Critical/Premium](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/service-tier-business-critical) service tier designed for OLTP applications with high transaction rate and lowest-latency I/O. It offers the highest resilience to failures by using several isolated replicas.
* [Hyperscale](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/service-tier-hyperscale) service tier designed for very large OLTP database and the ability to autoscale storage and scale compute fluidly.

### Elastic pools to maximize resource utilization

For many businesses and applications, being able to create single databases and dial performance up or down on demand is enough, especially if usage patterns are relatively predictable. Unpredictable usage patterns can make it hard to manage costs and your business model. [Elastic pools](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/elastic-pool-overview) are designed to solve this problem. You allocate performance resources to a pool rather than an individual database. You pay for the collective performance resources of the pool rather than for single database performance.



With elastic pools, you don't need to focus on dialing database performance up and down as demand for resources fluctuates. The pooled databases consume the performance resources of the elastic pool as

needed. Pooled databases consume but don't exceed the limits of the pool, so your cost remains predictable even if individual database usage doesn't.

You can [add and remove databases to the pool](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/elastic-pool-overview), scaling your app from a handful of databases to thousands, all within a budget that you control. You can also control the minimum and maximum resources available to databases in the pool, to ensure that no database in the pool uses all the pool resources, and that every pooled database has a guaranteed minimum amount of resources. To learn more about design patterns for software as a service (SaaS) applications that use elastic pools, see [Design patterns for multi-tenant SaaS applications with SQL Database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/saas-tenancy-app-design-patterns).

Scripts can help with monitoring and scaling elastic pools. For an example, see [Use PowerShell to monitor and scale an elastic pool in Azure SQL Database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/scripts/monitor-and-scale-pool-powershell).

### Blend single databases with pooled databases

You can blend single databases with elastic pools, and change the service tiers of single databases and elastic pools to adapt to your situation. You can also mix and match other Azure services with SQL Database to meet your unique app design needs, drive cost and resource efficiencies, and unlock new business opportunities.

## Extensive monitoring and alerting capabilities

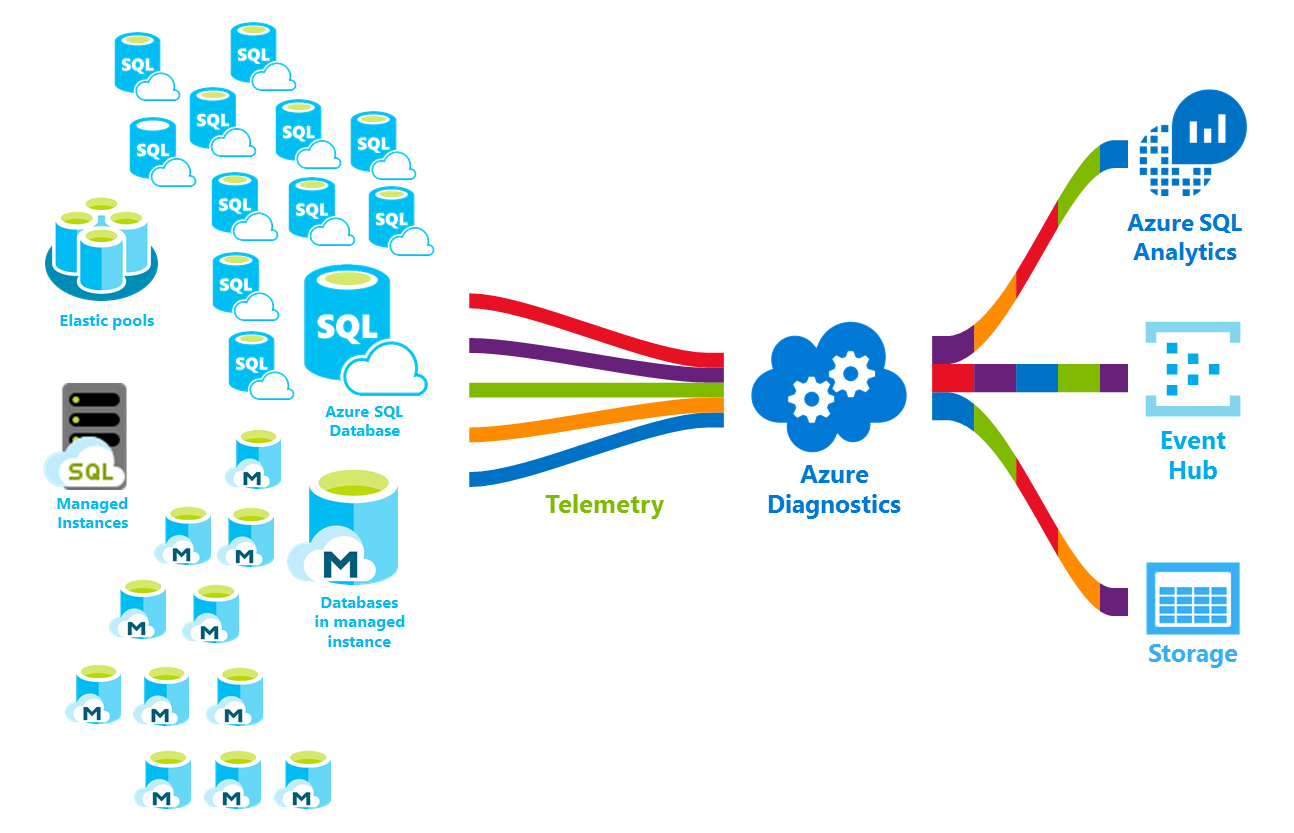
Azure SQL Database provides advanced monitoring and troubleshooting features that help you get deeper insights into workload characteristics. These features and tools include:

* The built-in monitoring capabilities provided by the latest version of the SQL Server database engine. They enable you to find real-time performance insights.
* PaaS monitoring capabilities provided by Azure that enable you to monitor and troubleshoot a large number of database instances.

[Query Store](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/performance/best-practice-with-the-query-store), a built-in SQL Server monitoring feature, records the performance of your queries in real time, and enables you to identify the potential performance issues and the top resource consumers. Automatic tuning and recommendations provide advice regarding the queries with the regressed performance and missing or duplicated indexes. Automatic tuning in SQL Database enables you to either manually apply the scripts that can fix the issues, or let SQL Database apply the fix. SQL Database can also test and verify that the fix provides some benefit, and retain or revert the change depending on the outcome. In addition to Query Store and automatic tuning capabilities, you can use standard [DMVs and XEvent](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/monitoring-with-dmvs) to monitor the workload performance.

Azure provides [built-in performance monitoring](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/performance-guidance) and [alerting](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/alerts-insights-configure-portal) tools, combined with performance ratings, that enable you to monitor the status of thousands of databases. Using these tools, you can quickly assess the impact of scaling up or down, based on your current or projected performance needs. Additionally, SQL Database can [emit metrics and resource logs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/metrics-diagnostic-telemetry-logging-streaming-export-configure) for easier monitoring. You can configure SQL Database to store resource usage, workers and sessions, and connectivity into one of these Azure resources:

* **Azure Storage**: For archiving vast amounts of telemetry for a small price.
* **Azure Event Hubs**: For integrating SQL Database telemetry with your custom monitoring solution or hot pipelines.
* **Azure Monitor logs**: For a built-in monitoring solution with reporting, alerting, and mitigating capabilities.



## Availability capabilities

Azure SQL Database enables your business to continue operating during disruptions. In a traditional SQL Server environment, you generally have at least two machines locally set up. These machines have exact, synchronously maintained, copies of the data to protect against a failure of a single machine or component. This environment provides high availability, but it doesn't protect against a natural disaster destroying your datacenter.

Disaster recovery assumes that a catastrophic event is geographically localized enough to have another machine or set of machines with a copy of your data far away. In SQL Server, you can use Always On Availability Groups running in async mode to get this capability. People often don't want to wait for replication to happen that far away before committing a transaction, so there's potential for data loss when you do unplanned failovers.

Databases in the Premium and Business Critical service tiers already [do something similar](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/high-availability-sla#premium-and-business-critical-service-tier-locally-redundant-availability) to the synchronization of an availability group. Databases in lower service tiers provide redundancy through storage by using a [different but equivalent mechanism](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/high-availability-sla#basic-standard-and-general-purpose-service-tier-locally-redundant-availability). Built-in logic helps protect against a single machine failure. The active geo-replication feature gives you the ability to protect against disaster where a whole region is destroyed.

Azure Availability Zones tries to protect against the outage of a single datacenter building within a single region. It helps you protect against the loss of power or network to a building. In SQL Database, you place the different replicas in different availability zones (different buildings, effectively).

In fact, the service level agreement [(SLA)](https://azure.microsoft.com/support/legal/sla/) of Azure, powered by a global network of Microsoft-managed datacenters, helps keep your app running 24/7. The Azure platform fully manages every database, and it guarantees no data loss and a high percentage of data availability. Azure automatically handles patching, backups, replication, failure detection, underlying potential hardware, software or network failures, deploying bug fixes, failovers, database upgrades, and other maintenance tasks. Standard availability is achieved by a separation of compute and storage layers. Premium availability is achieved by integrating compute and storage on a single node for performance, and then implementing technology similar to Always On Availability Groups. For a full discussion of the high availability capabilities of Azure SQL Database, see [SQL Database availability](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/high-availability-sla).

In addition, SQL Database provides built-in [business continuity and global scalability](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/business-continuity-high-availability-disaster-recover-hadr-overview) features. These include:

* [Automatic backups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/automated-backups-overview):

SQL Database automatically performs full, differential, and transaction log backups of databases to enable you to restore to any point in time. For single databases and pooled databases, you can configure SQL Database to store full database backups to Azure Storage for long-term backup retention. For managed instances, you can also perform copy-only backups for long-term backup retention.

* [Point-in-time restores](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/recovery-using-backups):

All SQL Database deployment options support recovery to any point in time within the automatic backup retention period for any database.

* [Active geo-replication](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/active-geo-replication-overview):

The single database and pooled databases options allow you to configure up to four readable secondary databases in either the same or globally distributed Azure datacenters. For example, if you have a SaaS application with a catalog database that has a high volume of concurrent read-only transactions, use active geo-replication to enable global read scale. This removes bottlenecks on the primary that are due to read workloads. For managed instances, use auto-failover groups.

* [Auto-failover groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/auto-failover-group-overview):

All SQL Database deployment options allow you to use failover groups to enable high availability and load balancing at global scale. This includes transparent geo-replication and failover of large sets of databases, elastic pools, and managed instances. Failover groups enable the creation of globally distributed SaaS applications, with minimal administration overhead. This leaves all the complex monitoring, routing, and failover orchestration to SQL Database.

* [Zone-redundant databases](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/high-availability-sla):

SQL Database allows you to provision Premium or Business Critical databases or elastic pools across multiple availability zones. Because these databases and elastic pools have multiple redundant replicas for high availability, placing these replicas into multiple availability zones provides higher resilience. This includes the ability to recover automatically from the datacenter scale failures, without data loss.

## Built-in intelligence

With SQL Database, you get built-in intelligence that helps you dramatically reduce the costs of running and managing databases, and that maximizes both performance and security of your application. Running millions of customer workloads around the clock, SQL Database collects and processes a massive amount of telemetry data, while also fully respecting customer privacy. Various algorithms continuously evaluate the telemetry data so that the service can learn and adapt with your application.

### Automatic performance monitoring and tuning

SQL Database provides detailed insight into the queries that you need to monitor. SQL Database learns about your database patterns, and enables you to adapt your database schema to your workload. SQL Database provides [performance tuning recommendations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/database-advisor-implement-performance-recommendations), where you can review tuning actions and apply them.

However, constantly monitoring a database is a hard and tedious task, especially when you're dealing with many databases. [Intelligent Insights](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/intelligent-insights-overview) does this job for you by automatically monitoring SQL Database performance at scale. It informs you of performance degradation issues, it identifies the root cause of each issue, and it provides performance improvement recommendations when possible.

Managing a huge number of databases might be impossible to do efficiently even with all available tools and reports that SQL Database and Azure provide. Instead of monitoring and tuning your database manually, you might consider delegating some of the monitoring and tuning actions to SQL Database by using [automatic tuning](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/automatic-tuning-overview). SQL Database automatically applies recommendations, tests, and verifies each of its tuning actions to ensure the performance keeps improving. This way, SQL Database automatically adapts to your workload in a controlled and safe way. Automatic tuning means that the performance of your database is carefully monitored and compared before and after every tuning action. If the performance doesn't improve, the tuning action is reverted.

Many of our partners that run [SaaS multi-tenant apps](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/saas-tenancy-app-design-patterns) on top of SQL Database are relying on automatic performance tuning to make sure their applications always have stable and predictable performance. For them, this feature tremendously reduces the risk of having a performance incident in the middle of the night. In addition, because part of their customer base also uses SQL Server, they're using the same indexing recommendations provided by SQL Database to help their SQL Server customers.

Two automatic tuning aspects are [available in SQL Database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/automatic-tuning-overview):

* **Automatic index management**: Identifies indexes that should be added in your database, and indexes that should be removed.
* **Automatic plan correction**: Identifies problematic plans and fixes SQL plan performance problems.

### Adaptive query processing

You can use [adaptive query processing](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/performance/intelligent-query-processing), including interleaved execution for multi-statement table-valued functions, batch mode memory grant feedback, and batch mode adaptive joins. Each of these adaptive query processing features applies similar "learn and adapt" techniques, helping further address performance issues related to historically intractable query optimization problems.

## Advanced security and compliance

SQL Database provides a range of [built-in security and compliance features](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/active-directory/identity-protection/concept-identity-protection-security-overview) to help your application meet various security and compliance requirements.

**Important**

Microsoft has certified Azure SQL Database (all deployment options) against a number of compliance standards. For more information, see the [**Microsoft Azure Trust Center**](https://gallery.technet.microsoft.com/Overview-of-Azure-c1be3942), where you can find the most current list of SQL Database compliance certifications.

### Advance threat protection

Azure Defender for SQL is a unified package for advanced SQL security capabilities. It includes functionality for managing your database vulnerabilities, and detecting anomalous activities that might indicate a threat to your database. It provides a single location for enabling and managing these capabilities.

* [Vulnerability assessment](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/sql-vulnerability-assessment):

This service can discover, track, and help you remediate potential database vulnerabilities. It provides visibility into your security state, and includes actionable steps to resolve security issues, and enhance your database fortifications.

* [Threat detection](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/threat-detection-configure):

This feature detects anomalous activities that indicate unusual and potentially harmful attempts to access or exploit your database. It continuously monitors your database for suspicious activities, and provides immediate security alerts on potential vulnerabilities, SQL injection attacks, and anomalous database access patterns. Threat detection alerts provide details of the suspicious activity, and recommend action on how to investigate and mitigate the threat.

### Auditing for compliance and security

[Auditing](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/auditing-overview) tracks database events and writes them to an audit log in your Azure storage account. Auditing can help you maintain regulatory compliance, understand database activity, and gain insight into discrepancies and anomalies that might indicate business concerns or suspected security violations.

### Data encryption

SQL Database helps secure your data by providing encryption. For data in motion, it uses [transport layer security](https://support.microsoft.com/kb/3135244). For data at rest, it uses [transparent data encryption](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/security/encryption/transparent-data-encryption-azure-sql). For data in use, it uses [Always Encrypted](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/security/encryption/always-encrypted-database-engine).

### Data discovery and classification

[Data discovery and classification](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/data-discovery-and-classification-overview) provides capabilities built into Azure SQL Database for discovering, classifying, labeling, and protecting the sensitive data in your databases. It provides visibility into your database classification state, and tracks the access to sensitive data within the database and beyond its borders.

### Azure Active Directory integration and multi-factor authentication

SQL Database enables you to centrally manage identities of database user and other Microsoft services with [Azure Active Directory integration](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/authentication-aad-overview). This capability simplifies permission management and enhances security. Azure Active Directory supports [multi-factor authentication](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/authentication-mfa-ssms-overview) to increase data and application security, while supporting a single sign-in process.

## Easy-to-use tools

SQL Database makes building and maintaining applications easier and more productive. SQL Database allows you to focus on what you do best: building great apps. You can manage and develop in SQL Database by using tools and skills you already have.

| **EASY-TO-USE TOOLS** | |
| --- | --- |
| **Tool** | **Description** |
| [The Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/) | A web-based application for managing all Azure services. |
| [Azure Data Studio](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/azure-data-studio/) | A cross-platform database tool that runs on Windows, macOS, and Linux. |
| [SQL Server Management Studio](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/ssms/download-sql-server-management-studio-ssms) | A free, downloadable client application for managing any SQL infrastructure, from SQL Server to SQL Database. |
| [SQL Server Data Tools in Visual Studio](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/ssdt/download-sql-server-data-tools-ssdt) | A free, downloadable client application for developing SQL Server relational databases, databases in Azure SQL Database, Integration Services packages, Analysis Services data models, and Reporting Services reports. |
| [Visual Studio Code](https://code.visualstudio.com/docs) | A free, downloadable, open-source code editor for Windows, macOS, and Linux. It supports extensions, including the [mssql extension](https://aka.ms/mssql-marketplace) for querying Microsoft SQL Server, Azure SQL Database, and Azure Azure Synapse Analytics (formerly SQL Data Warehouse). |

SQL Database supports building applications with Python, Java, Node.js, PHP, Ruby, and .NET on macOS, Linux, and Windows. SQL Database supports the same [connection libraries](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/connect-query-content-reference-guide#libraries) as SQL Server.

## Create and manage Azure SQL resources with the Azure portal

The Azure portal provides a single page where you can manage [all of your Azure SQL resources](https://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=2100641) including your SQL virtual machines.

To access the **Azure SQL** page, from the Azure portal menu, select **Azure SQL** or search for and select **Azure SQL** in any page.

**Note**

**Azure SQL** provides a quick and easy way to access all of your SQL resources in the Azure portal, including single and pooled database in Azure SQL Database as well as the logical SQL server hosting them, SQL Managed Instances, and SQL virtual machines. [**Azure SQL**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/azure-sql-iaas-vs-paas-what-is-overview) is not a service or resource, but rather a family of SQL-related services.

To manage existing resources, select the desired item in the list. To create new Azure SQL resources, select **+ Add**.

After selecting **+ Add**, view additional information about the different options by selecting **Show details** on any tile.

For details, see:

* [Create a single database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/single-database-create-quickstart)
* [Create an elastic pool](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/elastic-pool-overview#creating-a-new-sql-database-elastic-pool-using-the-azure-portal)
* [Create a managed instance](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/managed-instance/instance-create-quickstart)
* [Create a SQL virtual machine](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/virtual-machines/windows/sql-vm-create-portal-quickstart)

## SQL Database frequently asked questions

### Can I control when patching downtime occurs?

No. The impact of patching is generally not noticeable if you [employ retry logic](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/develop-overview#resiliency) in your app. For more information, see [Planning for Azure maintenance events in Azure SQL Database](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-sql/database/planned-maintenance).

## Engage with the SQL Server engineering team

* [DBA Stack Exchange](https://dba.stackexchange.com/questions/tagged/sql-server): Ask database administration questions.
* [Stack Overflow](https://stackoverflow.com/questions/tagged/sql-server): Ask development questions.
* [Microsoft Q&A question page](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/answers/topics/azure-synapse-analytics.html): Ask technical questions.
* [Feedback](https://aka.ms/sqlfeedback): Report bugs and request features.
* [Reddit](https://www.reddit.com/r/SQLServer/): Discuss SQL Server.

**AZURE KEY VAULT**

Azure Key Vault helps solve the following problems:

* **Secrets Management** - Azure Key Vault can be used to Securely store and tightly control access to tokens, passwords, certificates, API keys, and other secrets
* **Key Management** - Azure Key Vault can also be used as a Key Management solution. Azure Key Vault makes it easy to create and control the encryption keys used to encrypt your data.
* **Certificate Management** - Azure Key Vault is also a service that lets you easily provision, manage, and deploy public and private Transport Layer Security/Secure Sockets Layer (TLS/SSL) certificates for use with Azure and your internal connected resources.

Azure Key Vault has two service tiers: Standard, which encrypts with a software key, and a Premium tier, which includes HSM-protected keys. To see a comparison between the Standard and Premium tiers, see the [Azure Key Vault pricing page](https://azure.microsoft.com/pricing/details/key-vault/).

## Why use Azure Key Vault?

### Centralize application secrets

Centralizing storage of application secrets in Azure Key Vault allows you to control their distribution. Key Vault greatly reduces the chances that secrets may be accidentally leaked. When using Key Vault, application developers no longer need to store security information in their application. Not having to store security information in applications eliminates the need to make this information part of the code. For example, an application may need to connect to a database. Instead of storing the connection string in the app's code, you can store it securely in Key Vault.

Your applications can securely access the information they need by using URIs. These URIs allow the applications to retrieve specific versions of a secret. There is no need to write custom code to protect any of the secret information stored in Key Vault.

### Securely store secrets and keys

Access to a key vault requires proper authentication and authorization before a caller (user or application) can get access. Authentication establishes the identity of the caller, while authorization determines the operations that they are allowed to perform.

Authentication is done via Azure Active Directory. Authorization may be done via role-based access control (RBAC) or Key Vault access policy. RBAC is used when dealing with the management of the vaults and key vault access policy is used when attempting to access data stored in a vault.

Azure Key Vaults may be either software-protected or, with the Azure Key Vault Premium tier, hardware-protected by hardware security modules (HSMs). Software-protected keys, secrets, and certificates are safeguarded by Azure, using industry-standard algorithms and key lengths. For situations where you require added assurance, you can import or generate keys in HSMs that never leave the HSM boundary. Azure Key Vault uses nCipher HSMs, which are Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) 140-2 Level 2 validated. You can use nCipher tools to move a key from your HSM to Azure Key Vault.

Finally, Azure Key Vault is designed so that Microsoft does not see or extract your data.

### Monitor access and use

Once you have created a couple of Key Vaults, you will want to monitor how and when your keys and secrets are being accessed. You can monitor activity by enabling logging for your vaults. You can configure Azure Key Vault to:

* Archive to a storage account.
* Stream to an event hub.
* Send the logs to Azure Monitor logs.

You have control over your logs and you may secure them by restricting access and you may also delete logs that you no longer need.

### Simplified administration of application secrets

When storing valuable data, you must take several steps. Security information must be secured, it must follow a life cycle, and it must be highly available. Azure Key Vault simplifies the process of meeting these requirements by:

* Removing the need for in-house knowledge of Hardware Security Modules.
* Scaling up on short notice to meet your organization's usage spikes.
* Replicating the contents of your Key Vault within a region and to a secondary region. Data replication ensures high availability and takes away the need of any action from the administrator to trigger the failover.
* Providing standard Azure administration options via the portal, Azure CLI and PowerShell.
* Automating certain tasks on certificates that you purchase from Public CAs, such as enrollment and renewal.

In addition, Azure Key Vaults allow you to segregate application secrets. Applications may access only the vault that they are allowed to access, and they can be limited to only perform specific operations. You can create an Azure Key Vault per application and restrict the secrets stored in a Key Vault to a specific application and team of developers.

### Integrate with other Azure services

As a secure store in Azure, Key Vault has been used to simplify scenarios like:

* [Azure Disk Encryption](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/security/fundamentals/encryption-overview)
* The [always encrypted](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/security/encryption/always-encrypted-database-engine) and [Transparent Data Encryption](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/relational-databases/security/encryption/transparent-data-encryption?view=sql-server-ver15) functionality in SQL server and Azure SQL Database
* [Azure App Service](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/app-service/configure-ssl-certificate).

Key Vault itself can integrate with storage accounts, event hubs, and log analytics.

**MODERN LIFECYCLE POLICY**

The Modern Lifecycle Policy covers products and services that are serviced and supported continuously. Under this policy, the product or service remains in support if the following criteria are met:

1. Customers must stay current as per the servicing and system requirements published for the product or service.
2. Customers must be licensed to use the product or service.
3. Microsoft must currently offer support for the product or service.

**Change notification**

Changes for these products and services may be more frequent and require customers to be alert for forthcoming modifications to their product or service.

For products and services governed by the Modern Lifecycle Policy, unless otherwise noted, Microsoft's policy is to provide a *minimum 30 days'* notification when customers are required to take action in order to avoid significant degradation to the normal use of the product or service.

Visit these roadmaps to find information about upcoming features and releases:

1. M365: [https://www.microsoft.com/microsoft-365/roadmap](https://www.microsoft.com/en/microsoft-365/roadmap?rtc=2&filters=)
2. Azure: [https://azure.microsoft.com/updates](https://azure.microsoft.com/updates/)
3. Dynamics 365: [https://roadmap.dynamics.com](https://roadmap.dynamics.com/)

**Continuity and migration**

For products governed by the Modern Lifecycle Policy, Microsoft will provide a minimum of 12 months' notification prior to ending support if no successor product or service is offered—excluding free services or preview releases.

For products under existing lifecycle policies (such as the Fixed Lifecycle Policy), Microsoft will continue to provide servicing and support for a fixed amount of time. Products that have already launched with existing lifecycle policies will continue to be supported according to the [published end of support dates](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/lifecycle/products).

Please see the [Modern Policy FAQ](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/lifecycle/faq/modern-policy) for more details.

**AZURE SERVICE HEALTH**

Azure offers a suite of experiences to keep you informed about the health of your cloud resources. This information includes current and upcoming issues such as service impacting events, planned maintenance, and other changes that may affect your availability.

Azure Service Health is a combination of three separate smaller services.

[Azure status](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-health/azure-status-overview) informs you of service outages in Azure on the [**Azure Status page**](https://status.azure.com/). The page is a global view of the health of all Azure services across all Azure regions. The status page is a good reference for incidents with widespread impact, but we strongly recommend that current Azure users leverage Azure service health to stay informed about Azure incidents and maintenance.

[Service health](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-health/service-health-overview) provides a personalized view of the health of the Azure services and regions you're using. This is the best place to look for service impacting communications about outages, planned maintenance activities, and other health advisories because the authenticated Service Health experience knows which services and resources you currently use. The best way to use Service Health is to set up Service Health alerts to notify you via your preferred communication channels when service issues, planned maintenance, or other changes may affect the Azure services and regions you use.

[Resource health](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-health/resource-health-overview) provides information about the health of your individual cloud resources such as a specific virtual machine instance. Using Azure Monitor, you can also configure alerts to notify you of availability changes to your cloud resources. Resource Health along with Azure Monitor notifications will help you stay better informed about the availability of your resources minute by minute and quickly assess whether an issue is due to a problem on your side or related to an Azure platform event.

Together, these experiences provide you with a comprehensive view into the health of Azure, at the granularity that is most relevant to you.

**AZURE INFORMATION PROTECTION (AIP)**

Azure Information Protection (AIP) is a cloud-based solution that enables organizations to classify and protect documents and emails by applying labels. Labels can be applied:

* **Automatically** by administrators using rules and conditions
* **Manually** by users
* **By a combination** where administrators define the recommendations shown to users

For example, your administrator might configure a label with rules that detect sensitive data, such as credit card information. In this case, any user who saves credit card information in a Word file might see a tooltip at the top of the document with a recommendation to apply the relevant label for this scenario.

Labels can both [classify](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/what-is-information-protection#how-labels-apply-classification-with-aip), and optionally [protect](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/what-is-information-protection#how-aip-protects-your-data) your documents, enabling you to:

* **Track and control** how your content is used
* **Analyze data flows** to gain insight into your business **- Detect risky behaviors** and take corrective measures
* **Track document access** and prevent data leakage or misuse
* And more ...

## How labels apply classification with AIP

Use Azure Information Protection to apply classification labels to both documents and emails.

Labeling content includes:

* **Classification** that can be detected regardless of where the data is stored or with whom it's shared.
* **Visual markings,** such as headers, footers, or watermarks.
* **Metadata,** added to files and email headers in clear text. The clear text metadata ensures that other services can identify the classification and take appropriate action

For example, in the image below, labeling has classified an email message as General, using the [unified labeling client](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/faqs#whats-the-difference-between-the-azure-information-protection-classic-and-unified-labeling-clients):

In this example, the label also:

* **Added a footer of Sensitivity: General to the email message.** This footer is a visual indicator for all recipients that it's intended for general business data that should not be sent outside of the organization.
* **Embedded metadata in the email headers.** Header data enables email services can inspect the label and theoretically create an audit entry or prevent it from being sent outside of the organization.

## How AIP protects your data

Azure Information Protection uses the [Azure Rights Management service (Azure RMS)](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/what-is-azure-rms) to protect your data.

Azure RMS is integrated with other Microsoft cloud services and applications, such as Microsoft 365 and Azure Active Directory, and can also be used with your own or third-party applications and information protection solutions. Azure RMS works with both on-premises and cloud solutions.

Azure RMS uses encryption, identity, and authorization policies. Similar to AIP labels, protection applied using Azure RMS stays with the documents and emails, regardless of the document or email's location, ensuring that you stay in control of your content even when it's shared with other people.

Protection settings can be:

* **Part of your label configuration,** so that users both classify and protect documents and emails simply by applying a label.
* **Used on their own,** by applications and services that support protection but not labeling.

For applications and services that support protection only, protection settings are used as [Rights Management templates](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/what-is-information-protection#rights-management-templates).

For example, you may want to configure a report or sales forecast spreadsheet so that it can be accessed only by people in your organization. In this case, you'd apply protection settings to control whether that document can be edited, restrict it to read-only, or prevent it from being printed.

Emails can have similar protection settings to prevent them from being forwarded or from using the Reply All option.

### Rights Management templates

As soon as the Azure Rights Management service is activated, two default rights management templates are available for you to restrict data access to users within your organization. Use these templates immediately, or configure your own protection settings to apply more restrictive controls in new templates.

Rights Management templates can be used with any applications or services that support Azure Rights Management.

The following image shows an example from the Exchange admin center, where you can configure Exchange Online mail flow rules to use RMS templates:

**Note**

Creating an AIP label that includes protection settings also creates a corresponding Rights Management template that can be used separately from the label.

For more information, see [What is Azure Rights Management?](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/what-is-azure-rms)

## AIP and end-user integration for documents and emails

The AIP client installs the Information Protection bar to Office applications and enables end users to integrate AIP with their documents and emails.

For example, in Excel, using the [unified labeling client](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/faqs#whats-the-difference-between-the-azure-information-protection-classic-and-unified-labeling-clients):

While labels can be applied automatically to documents and emails, removing guesswork for users or to comply with an organization's policies, the Information Protection bar enables end users to select labels and apply classification on their own.

Additionally, the AIP client enables users to classify and protect additional file types, or multiple files at once, using the right-click menu from Windows File Explorer. For example:

The **Classify and protect** menu option works similarly to the Information Protection bar in Office applications, enabling users to select a label or set custom permissions.

**Tip**

Power users or administrators might find that PowerShell commands are more efficient for managing and setting classification and protection for multiple files. [**Relevant PowerShell commands**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/powershell/module/azureinformationprotection) are included with the client, and can also be installed separately.

Users and administrators can use document tracking sites to monitor protected documents, watch who accesses them, and when. If they suspect misuse, they can also revoke access to these documents. For example:

### Additional integration for email

Using AIP with Exchange Online provides the additional benefit of sending protected emails to any user, with the assurance that they can read it on any device.

For example, you may need to send sensitive information to personal email addresses that use a **Gmail**, **Hotmail**, or **Microsoft** account, or to users who don't have an account in Microsoft 365 or Azure AD. These emails should be encrypted at rest and in transit, and be read only by the original recipients.

This scenario requires [Office 365 Message Encryption capabilities](https://techcommunity.microsoft.com/t5/Security-Privacy-and-Compliance/Email-Encryption-and-Rights-Protection/ba-p/110801). If the recipients cannot open the protected email in their native email client, they can use a one-time passcode to read the sensitive information in a browser.

For example, a Gmail user might see the following prompt in an email message they receive:

For the user sending the email, the actions required are the same as for sending a protected email to a user in their own organization. For example, select the **Do Not Forward** button that the AIP client can add to the Outlook ribbon.

Alternately, Do Not Forward functionality can be integrated into a label that users can select to apply both classification and protection to that email. For example, in the [unified labeling client](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/faqs#whats-the-difference-between-the-azure-information-protection-classic-and-unified-labeling-clients):

Administrators can also automatically provide protection for users by configuring mail flow rules that apply rights protection.

Any Office documents attached to these emails are automatically protected as well.

## Scanning for existing content to classify and protect

Ideally, you'll be labeling documents and emails as they're created. However, you likely have many existing documents, stored either on-premises or in the cloud, and want to classify and protect these documents as well.

Use one of the following methods to classify and protect existing content:

* **On-premises storage**: Use the [Azure Information Protection scanner](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/information-protection/deploy-aip-scanner) to discover, classify, and protect documents on network shares and Microsoft SharePoint Server sites and libraries.

The scanner runs as a service on Windows Server, and uses the same policy rules to detect sensitive information and apply specific labels to documents.

Alternately, use the scanner to apply a default label to all documents in a data repository without inspecting the file contents. Use the scanner in reporting mode only to discover sensitive information that you might not know you had.

* **Cloud data storage**: Use [Microsoft Cloud App Security](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/cloud-app-security/azip-integration) to apply your labels to documents in Box, SharePoint, and OneDrive. For a tutorial, see [Automatically apply Azure Information Protection classification labels](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/cloud-app-security/use-case-information-protection)

**AZURE GOVERNMENT**

US government agencies or their partners interested in cloud services that meet government security and compliance requirements, can be confident that [Microsoft Azure Government](https://azure.microsoft.com/global-infrastructure/government/) provides world-class [security, protection, and compliance services](https://www.microsoft.com/TrustCenter/Compliance/default.aspx). Azure Government delivers a dedicated cloud enabling government agencies and their partners to transform mission-critical workloads to the cloud. Azure Government services handle data that is subject to certain government regulations and requirements, such as FedRAMP, NIST 800.171 (DIB), ITAR, IRS 1075, DoD L4, and CJIS. In order to provide you with the highest level of security and compliance, Azure Government uses physically isolated datacenters and networks (located in U.S. only).

Azure Government customers (US federal, state, and local government or their partners) are subject to validation of eligibility. If there is a question about eligibility for Azure Government, you should consult your account team. To sign up for trial, request your [trial subscription](https://azure.microsoft.com/global-infrastructure/government/request/?ReqType=Trial).

The following video gives a good introduction of Azure Government.

## Compare Azure Government and global Azure

Azure Government uses same underlying technologies as global Azure, which includes the core components of [Infrastructure-as-a-Service (IaaS)](https://azure.microsoft.com/overview/what-is-iaas/), [Platform-as-a-Service (PaaS)](https://azure.microsoft.com/overview/what-is-paas/), and [Software-as-a-Service (SaaS)](https://azure.microsoft.com/overview/what-is-saas/). Azure Government includes Geo-Synchronous data replication, auto scaling, network, storage, data management, identity management, among other services. However, there are some key differences that developers working on applications hosted in Azure Government must be aware of. For detailed information, see [Guidance for developers](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-government/documentation-government-developer-guide).

As a developer, you must know how to connect to Azure Government and once you connect you will mostly have the same experience as global Azure. To see variations between Azure Government and global Azure, see [Compare Azure Government and global Azure](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-government/compare-azure-government-global-azure) and click on individual service.

This topic explains the basics of Windows Azure subscriptions and describes how a technical staff can create and manage their Azure subscription.

*Note - This topic does not explain how to sign up for a Windows Azure subscription or how an organization creates an enrollment for Windows Azure Services. For information about Windows Azure purchase options, see* [*Purchase  
Options*](http://www.windowsazure.com/en-us/pricing/purchase-options/) *,* [*Free Trial*](http://www.windowsazure.com/en-us/pricing/free-trial/) *, and* [*Member Offers*](http://www.windowsazure.com/en-us/pricing/member-offers/) *(for members of MSDN, Microsoft Partner Network, and BizSpark, and other Microsoft programs).*

What is Azure Subscription

A Windows Azure subscription grants you access to Windows Azure services and to the Windows Azure Platform Management Portal.

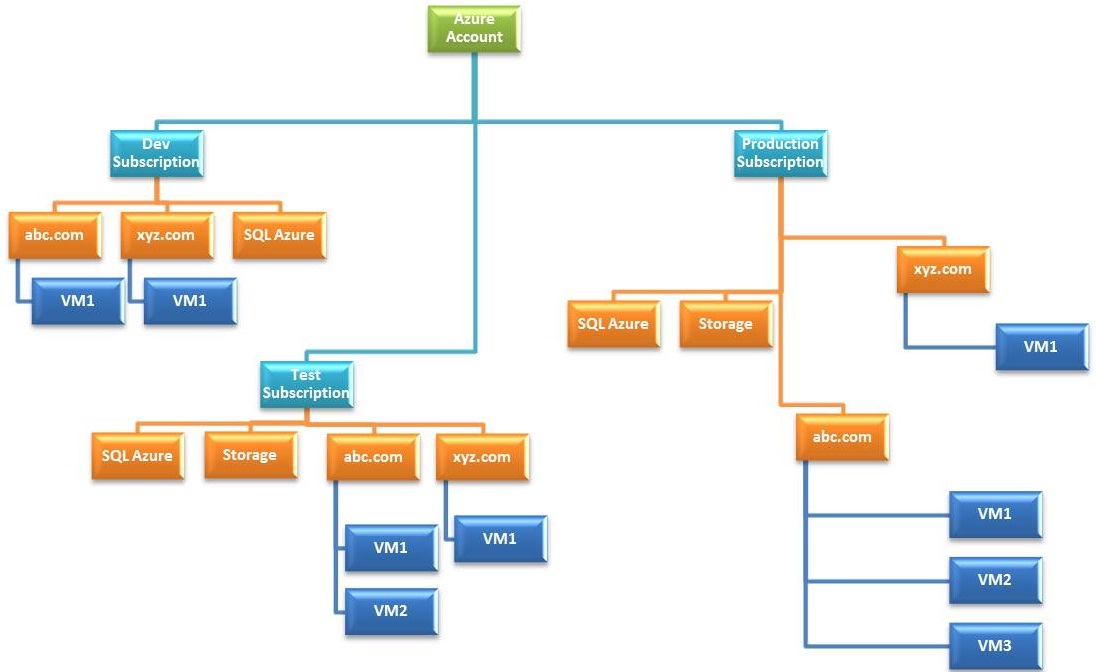
A Windows Azure subscription has two aspects:

* The Windows Azure account, through which resource usage is reported and services are billed.
* The subscription itself, which governs access to and use of the Windows Azure services that are subscribed to. The subscription holder manages services (Windows Azure , SQL Azure, Storage etc)  through the Windows Azure Platform  
  Management Portal

Let’s relate this concept with real world. When our decided to move one of the critical application to Azure following is the model we opted for Azure subscription. We created separate subscription for Dev , Test and Production environment. It helps in multiple ways :-

- I can monitor billing and usage for each of this environment separately

- To ensure security I can have different co-admin for each of this Subscription

[](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/archive/blogs/arunrakwal/create-windows-azure-subscription)

Service Health provides you with a customizable dashboard which tracks the health of your Azure services in the regions where you use them. In this dashboard, you can track active events like ongoing service issues, upcoming planned maintenance, or relevant health advisories. When events become inactive, they get placed in your health history for up to 90 days. Finally, you can use the Service Health dashboard to create and manage service health alerts which proactively notify you when service issues are affecting you.

**Service Health Events**

Service Health tracks four types of health events that may impact your resources:

1. **Service issues** - Problems in the Azure services that affect you right now.
2. **Planned maintenance** - Upcoming maintenance that can affect the availability of your services in the future.
3. **Health advisories** - Changes in Azure services that require your attention. Examples include deprecation of Azure features or upgrade requirements (e.g upgrade to a supported PHP framework).
4. **Security advisories** - Security related notifications or violations that may affect the availability of your Azure services.

**Note**

To view Service Health events, users must be [**granted the Reader role**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/role-assignments-portal) on a subscription.

**Get started with Service Health**

To launch your Service Health dashboard, select the Service Health tile on your portal dashboard. If you have previously removed the tile or you're using custom dashboard, search for Service Health service in "More services" (bottom left on your dashboard).

**See current issues which impact your services**

The **Service issues** view shows any ongoing problems in Azure services that are impacting your resources. You can understand when the issue began, and what services and regions are impacted. You can also read the most recent update to understand what Azure is doing to resolve the issue.

Choose the **Potential impact** tab to see the specific list of resources you own that might be impacted by the issue. You can download a CSV list of these resources to share with your team.

**See emerging issues which may impact your services**

There are situations when widespread service issues may be posted to the [Azure Status page](https://status.azure.com/) before targeted communications can be sent to impacted customers. To ensure that Azure Service Health provides a comprehensive view of issues that may affect you, active Azure Status page issues are surfaced in Service Health as *emerging issues*. When an event is active on the Azure Status page, an emerging issues banner will be present in Service Health. Click the banner to see the full details of the issue.

**Get links and downloadable explanations**

You can get a link for the issue to use in your problem management system. You can download PDF and sometimes CSV files to share with people who don't have access to the Azure portal.

**Get support from Microsoft**

Contact support if your resource is left in a bad state even after the issue is resolved. Use the support links on the right of the page.

**Pin a personalized health map to your dashboard**

Filter Service Health to show your business-critical subscriptions, regions, and resource types. Save the filter and pin a personalized health world map to your portal dashboard.

**Configure service health alerts**

Service Health integrates with Azure Monitor to alert you via emails, text messages, and webhook notifications when your business-critical resources are impacted. Set up an activity log alert for the appropriate service health event. Route that alert to the appropriate people in your organization using Action Groups. For more information, see [Configure Alerts for Service Health](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-health/alerts-activity-log-service-notifications-portal)

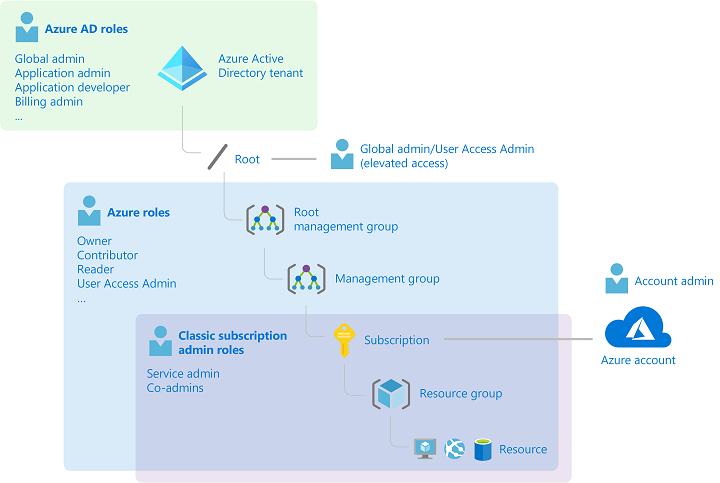
If you are new to Azure, you may find it a little challenging to understand all the different roles in Azure. This article helps explain the following roles and when you would use each:

* Classic subscription administrator roles
* Azure roles
* Azure Active Directory (Azure AD) roles

## How the roles are related

To better understand roles in Azure, it helps to know some of the history. When Azure was initially released, access to resources was managed with just three administrator roles: Account Administrator, Service Administrator, and Co-Administrator. Later, Azure role-based access control (Azure RBAC) was added. Azure RBAC is a newer authorization system that provides fine-grained access management to Azure resources. Azure RBAC includes many built-in roles, can be assigned at different scopes, and allows you to create your own custom roles. To manage resources in Azure AD, such as users, groups, and domains, there are several Azure AD roles.

The following diagram is a high-level view of how the classic subscription administrator roles, Azure roles, and Azure AD roles are related.



## Classic subscription administrator roles

Account Administrator, Service Administrator, and Co-Administrator are the three classic subscription administrator roles in Azure. Classic subscription administrators have full access to the Azure subscription. They can manage resources using the Azure portal, Azure Resource Manager APIs, and the classic deployment model APIs. The account that is used to sign up for Azure is automatically set as both the Account Administrator and Service Administrator. Then, additional Co-Administrators can be added. The Service Administrator and the Co-Administrators have the equivalent access of users who have been assigned the Owner role (an Azure role) at the subscription scope. The following table describes the differences between these three classic subscription administrative roles.

| **CLASSIC SUBSCRIPTION ADMINISTRATOR ROLES** | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Classic subscription administrator** | **Limit** | **Permissions** | **Notes** |
| Account Administrator | 1 per Azure account | * Manage billing in the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/#blade/Microsoft_Azure_Billing/SubscriptionsBlade) * Manage all subscriptions in an account * Create new subscriptions * Cancel subscriptions * Change the billing for a subscription * Change the Service Administrator | Conceptually, the billing owner of the subscription. The Account Administrator has no access to the Azure portal. |
| Service Administrator | 1 per Azure subscription | * Manage services in the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/) * Cancel the subscription * Assign users to the Co-Administrator role | By default, for a new subscription, the Account Administrator is also the Service Administrator. The Service Administrator has the equivalent access of a user who is assigned the Owner role at the subscription scope. The Service Administrator has full access to the Azure portal. |
| Co-Administrator | 200 per subscription | * Same access privileges as the Service Administrator, but can’t change the association of subscriptions to Azure directories * Assign users to the Co-Administrator role, but cannot change the Service Administrator | The Co-Administrator has the equivalent access of a user who is assigned the Owner role at the subscription scope. |

In the Azure portal, you can manage Co-Administrators or view the Service Administrator by using the **Classic administrators** tab.

In the Azure portal, you can view or change the Service Administrator or view the Account Administrator on the properties blade of your subscription.

For more information, see [Azure classic subscription administrators](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/classic-administrators).

### Azure account and Azure subscriptions

An Azure account represents a billing relationship. An Azure account is a user identity, one or more Azure subscriptions, and an associated set of Azure resources. The person who creates the account is the Account Administrator for all subscriptions created in that account. That person is also the default Service Administrator for the subscription.

Azure subscriptions help you organize access to Azure resources. They also help you control how resource usage is reported, billed, and paid for. Each subscription can have a different billing and payment setup, so you can have different subscriptions and different plans by office, department, project, and so on. Every service belongs to a subscription, and the subscription ID may be required for programmatic operations.

Each subscription is associated with an Azure AD directory. To find the directory the subscription is associated with, open **Subscriptions** in the Azure portal and then select a subscription to see the directory.

Accounts and subscriptions are managed in the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/#blade/Microsoft_Azure_Billing/SubscriptionsBlade).

## Azure roles

Azure RBAC is an authorization system built on [Azure Resource Manager](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/overview) that provides fine-grained access management to Azure resources, such as compute and storage. Azure RBAC includes over 70 built-in roles. There are four fundamental Azure roles. The first three apply to all resource types:

| **AZURE ROLES** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Azure role** | **Permissions** | **Notes** |
| [Owner](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#owner) | * Full access to all resources * Delegate access to others | The Service Administrator and Co-Administrators are assigned the Owner role at the subscription scope Applies to all resource types. |
| [Contributor](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#contributor) | * Create and manage all of types of Azure resources * Create a new tenant in Azure Active Directory * Cannot grant access to others | Applies to all resource types. |
| [Reader](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#reader) | * View Azure resources | Applies to all resource types. |
| [User Access Administrator](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#user-access-administrator) | * Manage user access to Azure resources |  |

The rest of the built-in roles allow management of specific Azure resources. For example, the [Virtual Machine Contributor](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#virtual-machine-contributor) role allows the user to create and manage virtual machines. For a list of all the built-in roles, see [Azure built-in roles](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles).

Only the Azure portal and the Azure Resource Manager APIs support Azure RBAC. Users, groups, and applications that are assigned Azure roles cannot use the [Azure classic deployment model APIs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/deployment-models).

In the Azure portal, role assignments using Azure RBAC appear on the **Access control (IAM)** blade. This blade can be found throughout the portal, such as management groups, subscriptions, resource groups, and various resources.

When you click the **Roles** tab, you will see the list of built-in and custom roles.

For more information, see [Add or remove Azure role assignments using the Azure portal](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/role-assignments-portal).

## Azure AD roles

Azure AD roles are used to manage Azure AD resources in a directory such as create or edit users, assign administrative roles to others, reset user passwords, manage user licenses, and manage domains. The following table describes a few of the more important Azure AD roles.

| **AZURE AD ROLES** | | |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Azure AD role** | **Permissions** | **Notes** |
| [Global Administrator](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/active-directory/roles/permissions-reference#company-administrator-permissions) | * Manage access to all administrative features in Azure Active Directory, as well as services that federate to Azure Active Directory * Assign administrator roles to others * Reset the password for any user and all other administrators | The person who signs up for the Azure Active Directory tenant becomes a Global Administrator. |
| [User Administrator](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/active-directory/roles/permissions-reference#user-administrator) | * Create and manage all aspects of users and groups * Manage support tickets * Monitor service health * Change passwords for users, Helpdesk administrators, and other User Administrators |  |
| [Billing Administrator](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/active-directory/roles/permissions-reference#billing-administrator) | * Make purchases * Manage subscriptions * Manage support tickets * Monitors service health |  |

In the Azure portal, you can see the list of Azure AD roles on the **Roles and administrators** blade. For a list of all the Azure AD roles, see [Administrator role permissions in Azure Active Directory](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/active-directory/roles/permissions-reference).

## Differences between Azure roles and Azure AD roles

At a high level, Azure roles control permissions to manage Azure resources, while Azure AD roles control permissions to manage Azure Active Directory resources. The following table compares some of the differences.

| **DIFFERENCES BETWEEN AZURE ROLES AND AZURE AD ROLES** | |
| --- | --- |
| **Azure roles** | **Azure AD roles** |
| Manage access to Azure resources | Manage access to Azure Active Directory resources |
| Supports custom roles | Supports custom roles |
| Scope can be specified at multiple levels (management group, subscription, resource group, resource) | Scope is at the tenant level |
| Role information can be accessed in Azure portal, Azure CLI, Azure PowerShell, Azure Resource Manager templates, REST API | Role information can be accessed in Azure admin portal, Microsoft 365 admin center, Microsoft Graph, AzureAD PowerShell |

### Do Azure roles and Azure AD roles overlap?

By default, Azure roles and Azure AD roles do not span Azure and Azure AD. However, if a Global Administrator elevates their access by choosing the **Access management for Azure resources** switch in the Azure portal, the Global Administrator will be granted the [User Access Administrator](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#user-access-administrator) role (an Azure role) on all subscriptions for a particular tenant. The User Access Administrator role enables the user to grant other users access to Azure resources. This switch can be helpful to regain access to a subscription. For more information, see [Elevate access to manage all Azure subscriptions and management groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/elevate-access-global-admin).

Several Azure AD roles span Azure AD and Microsoft 365, such as the Global Administrator and User Administrator roles. For example, if you are a member of the Global Administrator role, you have global administrator capabilities in Azure AD and Microsoft 365, such as making changes to Microsoft Exchange and Microsoft SharePoint. However, by default, the Global Administrator doesn't have access to Azure resources.

## Checklist before moving resources

There are some important steps to do before moving a resource. By verifying these conditions, you can avoid errors.

1. The resources you want to move must support the move operation. For a list of which resources support move, see [Move operation support for resources](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/move-support-resources).
2. Some services have specific limitations or requirements when moving resources. If you're moving any of the following services, check that guidance before moving.
   * If you're using Azure Stack Hub, you can't move resources between groups.
   * [App Services move guidance](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/move-limitations/app-service-move-limitations)
   * [Azure DevOps Services move guidance](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/devops/organizations/billing/change-azure-subscription?toc=/azure/azure-resource-manager/toc.json)
   * [Classic deployment model move guidance](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/move-limitations/classic-model-move-limitations) - Classic Compute, Classic Storage, Classic Virtual Networks, and Cloud Services
   * [Networking move guidance](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/move-limitations/networking-move-limitations)
   * [Recovery Services move guidance](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/backup/backup-azure-move-recovery-services-vault?toc=/azure/azure-resource-manager/toc.json)
   * [Virtual Machines move guidance](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/move-limitations/virtual-machines-move-limitations)
3. If you move a resource that has an Azure role assigned directly to the resource (or a child resource), the role assignment is not moved and becomes orphaned. After the move, you must re-create the role assignment. Eventually, the orphaned role assignment will be automatically removed, but it is a best practice to remove the role assignment before moving the resource.

For information about how to manage role assignments, see [List Azure role assignments](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/role-assignments-list-portal#list-role-assignments-at-a-scope) and [Add or remove Azure role assignments](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/role-assignments-portal).

1. The source and destination subscriptions must be active. If you have trouble enabling an account that has been disabled, [create an Azure support request](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-portal/supportability/how-to-create-azure-support-request). Select **Subscription Management** for the issue type.
2. The source and destination subscriptions must exist within the same [Azure Active Directory tenant](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/active-directory/develop/quickstart-create-new-tenant). To check that both subscriptions have the same tenant ID, use Azure PowerShell or Azure CLI.

## Scenario for move across subscriptions

Moving resources from one subscription to another is a three-step process:

For illustration purposes, we have only one dependent resource.

* Step 1: If dependent resources are distributed across different resource groups, first move them into one resource group.
* Step 2: Move the resource and dependent resources together from the source subscription to the target subscription.
* Step 3: Optionally, redistribute the dependent resources to different resource groups within the target subscription.

## Validate move

The [validate move operation](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/resources/resources/validatemoveresources) lets you test your move scenario without actually moving the resources. Use this operation to check if the move will succeed. Validation is automatically called when you send a move request. Use this operation only when you need to predetermine the results. To run this operation, you need the:

* name of the source resource group
* resource ID of the target resource group
* resource ID of each resource to move
* the [access token](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/azure/#acquire-an-access-token) for your account

**AZURE RESERVATIONS**

Azure Reservations help you save money by committing to one-year or three-year plans for multiple products. Committing allows you to get a discount on the resources you use. Reservations can significantly reduce your resource costs by up to 72% from pay-as-you-go prices. Reservations provide a billing discount and don't affect the runtime state of your resources. After you purchase a reservation, the discount automatically applies to matching resources.

You can pay for a reservation up front or monthly. The total cost of up-front and monthly reservations is the same and you don't pay any extra fees when you choose to pay monthly. Monthly payment is available for Azure reservations, not third-party products.

You can buy a reservation in the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/#blade/Microsoft_Azure_Reservations/ReservationsBrowseBlade).

**Why buy a reservation?**

If you have consistent resource usage that supports reservations, buying a reservation gives you the option to reduce your costs. For example, when you continuously run instances of a service without a reservation, you're charged at pay-as-you-go rates. When you buy a reservation, you immediately get the reservation discount. The resources are no longer charged at the pay-as-you-go rates.

**How reservation discount is applied**

After purchase, the reservation discount automatically applies to the resource usage that matches the attributes you select when you buy the reservation. Attributes include the SKU, regions (where applicable), and scope. Reservation scope selects where the reservation savings apply.

For more information about how discount is applied, see [Reserved instance discount application](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cost-management-billing/reservations/reservation-discount-application).

For more information about how reservation scope works, see [Scope reservations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cost-management-billing/reservations/prepare-buy-reservation#scope-reservations).

**Determine what to purchase**

All reservations, except Azure Databricks, are applied on an hourly basis. Consider reservation purchases based on your consistent base usage. You can determine which reservation to purchase by analyzing your usage data or by using reservation recommendations. Recommendations are available in:

* Azure Advisor (VMs only)
* Reservation purchase experience in the Azure portal
* Cost Management Power BI app
* APIs

For more information, see [Determine what reservation to purchase](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cost-management-billing/reservations/determine-reservation-purchase)

**Buying a reservation**

You can purchase reservations from the Azure portal, APIs, PowerShell, and CLI.

Go to the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/#blade/Microsoft_Azure_Reservations/CreateBlade/referrer/Docs) to make a purchase.

For more information, see [Buy a reservation](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cost-management-billing/reservations/prepare-buy-reservation).

**How is a reservation billed?**

The reservation is charged to the payment method tied to the subscription. The reservation cost is deducted from your monetary commitment balance, if available. When your monetary commitment balance doesn't cover the cost of the reservation, you're billed the overage. If you have a subscription from an individual plan with pay-as-you-go rates, the credit card you have on your account is billed immediately for up-front purchases. Monthly payments appear on your invoice and your credit card is charged monthly. When you're billed by invoice, you see the charges on your next invoice.

**Permissions to view and manage reservations**

The user who purchases a reservation and the account administrator of the subscription used for billing the reservation get the Owner role on the reservation order and the reservation.

You can delegate reservation management by adding people to roles on the reservation order or the reservation. You assign the roles in the Azure portal or by using APIs and PowerShell.

For more information, see [Add or change users who can manage a reservation](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cost-management-billing/reservations/manage-reserved-vm-instance#add-or-change-users-who-can-manage-a-reservation)

**Get reservation details and utilization after purchase**

If you have permission to view to the reservation, you can see it and its use in the Azure portal. You can get the data using APIs, as well.

For more information on how to see reservations in Azure portal, see [View reservations in the Azure portal](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cost-management-billing/reservations/view-reservations)

**Manage reservations after purchase**

After you buy an Azure reservation, you can update the scope to apply reservation to a different subscription, change who can manage the reservation, split a reservation into smaller parts, or change instance size flexibility.

For more information, see [Manage Reservations for Azure resources](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cost-management-billing/reservations/manage-reserved-vm-instance)

**Flexibility with Azure reservations**

Azure Reservations provide flexibility to help meet your evolving needs. You can exchange a reservation for another reservation of the same type. You can also refund a reservation, up to $50,000 USD in a 12 month rolling window, if you no longer need it. The maximum limit of the refund applies to all reservations in the scope of your agreement with Microsoft.

For more information, see [Self-service exchanges and refunds for Azure Reservations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/cost-management-billing/reservations/exchange-and-refund-azure-reservations)

**Charges covered by reservation**

* **Reserved Virtual Machine Instance** - A reservation only covers the virtual machine and cloud services compute costs. It doesn't cover additional software, Windows, networking, or storage charges.
* **Azure Storage reserved capacity** - A reservation covers storage capacity for standard storage accounts for Blob storage or Azure Data Lake Gen2 storage. The reservation doesn't cover bandwidth or transaction rates.
* **Azure Cosmos DB reserved capacity** - A reservation covers throughput provisioned for your resources. It doesn't cover the storage and networking charges.
* **SQL Database reserved vCore** - Only the compute costs are included with a reservation. The SQL license is billed separately.
* **Azure Synapse Analytics** - A reservation covers cDWU usage. It doesn't cover storage or networking charges associated with the Azure Synapse Analytics usage.
* **Azure Databricks** - A reservation covers only the DBU usage. Other charges, such as compute, storage, and networking, are applied separately.
* **App Service stamp fee** - A reservation covers stamp usage. It doesn't apply to workers, so any other resources associated with the stamp are charged separately.
* **Azure Database for MySQL** - Only the compute costs are included with a reservation. A reservation doesn't cover software, networking, or storage charges associated with the MySQL Database server.
* **Azure Database for PostgreSQL** - Only the compute costs are included with a reservation. A reservation doesn't cover software, networking, or storage charges associated with the PostgreSQL Database servers.
* **Azure Database for MariaDB** - Only the compute costs are included with a reservation. A reservation doesn't cover software, networking, or storage charges associated with the MariaDB Database server.
* **Azure Data Explorer** - A reservation covers the markup charges. A reservation doesn't apply to compute, networking, or storage charges associated with the clusters.
* **Azure Cache for Redis** - Only the compute costs are included with a reservation. A reservation doesn't cover networking or storage charges associated with the Redis cache instances.
* **Azure Dedicated Host** - Only the compute costs are included with the Dedicated host.
* **Azure Disk Storage reservations** - A reservation only covers premium SSDs of P30 size or greater. It doesn't cover any other disk types or sizes smaller than P30.

Software plans:

* Detect and diagnose issues across applications and dependencies with [Application Insights](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/app/app-insights-overview).
* Correlate infrastructure issues with [Azure Monitor for VMs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/insights/vminsights-overview) and [Azure Monitor for Containers](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/insights/container-insights-overview).
* Drill into your monitoring data with [Log Analytics](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/log-query/log-query-overview) for troubleshooting and deep diagnostics.
* Support operations at scale with [smart alerts](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/alerts-smartgroups-overview) and [automated actions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/alerts-action-rules).
* Create visualizations with Azure [dashboards](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/learn/tutorial-logs-dashboards) and [workbooks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/workbooks-overview).

## Overview

The following diagram gives a high-level view of Azure Monitor. At the center of the diagram are the data stores for metrics and logs, which are the two fundamental types of data used by Azure Monitor. On the left are the [sources of monitoring data](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/data-sources) that populate these [data stores](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/data-platform). On the right are the different functions that Azure Monitor performs with this collected data such as analysis, alerting, and streaming to external systems.

## Monitoring data platform

All data collected by Azure Monitor fits into one of two fundamental types, [metrics and logs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/data-platform). [Metrics](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/data-platform-metrics) are numerical values that describe some aspect of a system at a particular point in time. They are lightweight and capable of supporting near real-time scenarios. [Logs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/data-platform-logs) contain different kinds of data organized into records with different sets of properties for each type. Telemetry such as events and traces are stored as logs in addition to performance data so that it can all be combined for analysis.

For many Azure resources, you'll see data collected by Azure Monitor right in their Overview page in the Azure portal. Have a look at any virtual machine for example, and you'll see several charts displaying performance metrics. Click on any of the graphs to open the data in [metrics explorer](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/metrics-charts) in the Azure portal, which allows you to chart the values of multiple metrics over time. You can view the charts interactively or pin them to a dashboard to view them with other visualizations.

Log data collected by Azure Monitor can be analyzed with [queries](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/log-query/log-query-overview) to quickly retrieve, consolidate, and analyze collected data. You can create and test queries using [Log Analytics](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/log-query/log-query-overview) in the Azure portal and then either directly analyze the data using different tools or save queries for use with [visualizations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/visualizations) or [alert rules](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/alerts-overview).

Azure Monitor uses a version of the [Kusto query language](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/kusto/query/) used by Azure Data Explorer that is suitable for simple log queries but also includes advanced functionality such as aggregations, joins, and smart analytics. You can quickly learn the query language using [multiple lessons](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/log-query/get-started-queries). Particular guidance is provided to users who are already familiar with [SQL](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/log-query/sql-cheatsheet) and [Splunk](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/log-query/splunk-cheatsheet).

## What data does Azure Monitor collect?

Azure Monitor can collect data from a variety of sources. You can think of monitoring data for your applications in tiers ranging from your application, any operating system and services it relies on, down to the platform itself. Azure Monitor collects data from each of the following tiers:

* **Application monitoring data**: Data about the performance and functionality of the code you have written, regardless of its platform.
* **Guest OS monitoring data**: Data about the operating system on which your application is running. This could be running in Azure, another cloud, or on-premises.
* **Azure resource monitoring data**: Data about the operation of an Azure resource.
* **Azure subscription monitoring data**: Data about the operation and management of an Azure subscription, as well as data about the health and operation of Azure itself.
* **Azure tenant monitoring data**: Data about the operation of tenant-level Azure services, such as Azure Active Directory.

As soon as you create an Azure subscription and start adding resources such as virtual machines and web apps, Azure Monitor starts collecting data. [Activity logs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/platform-logs-overview) record when resources are created or modified. [Metrics](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/data-platform) tell you how the resource is performing and the resources that it's consuming.

Extend the data you're collecting into the actual operation of the resources by [enabling diagnostics](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/platform-logs-overview) and [adding an agent](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/agent-windows) to compute resources. This will collect telemetry for the internal operation of the resource and allow you to configure different [data sources](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/agent-data-sources) to collect logs and metrics from Windows and Linux guest operating system.

Enable monitoring for your [App Services application](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/app/azure-web-apps) or [VM and virtual machine scale set application](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/app/azure-vm-vmss-apps), to enable Application Insights to collect detailed information about your application including page views, application requests, and exceptions. Further verify the availability of your application by configuring an [availability test](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/app/monitor-web-app-availability) to simulate user traffic.

### Custom sources

Azure Monitor can collect log data from any REST client using the [Data Collector API](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/data-collector-api). This allows you to create custom monitoring scenarios and extend monitoring to resources that don't expose telemetry through other sources.

## Insights

Monitoring data is only useful if it can increase your visibility into the operation of your computing environment. Azure Monitor includes several features and tools that provide valuable insights into your applications and other resources that they depend on. [Monitoring solutions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/insights/solutions) and features such as [Application Insights](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/app/app-insights-overview) and [Azure Monitor for containers](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/insights/container-insights-overview) provide deep insights into different aspects of your application and specific Azure services.

### Application Insights

[Application Insights](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/app/app-insights-overview) monitors the availability, performance, and usage of your web applications whether they're hosted in the cloud or on-premises. It leverages the powerful data analysis platform in Azure Monitor to provide you with deep insights into your application's operations and diagnose errors without waiting for a user to report them. Application Insights includes connection points to a variety of development tools and integrates with Visual Studio to support your DevOps processes.

### Azure Monitor for containers

[Azure Monitor for containers](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/insights/container-insights-overview) is a feature designed to monitor the performance of container workloads deployed to managed Kubernetes clusters hosted on Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS). It gives you performance visibility by collecting memory and processor metrics from controllers, nodes, and containers that are available in Kubernetes through the Metrics API. Container logs are also collected. After you enable monitoring from Kubernetes clusters, these metrics and logs are automatically collected for you through a containerized version of the Log Analytics agent for Linux.

### Azure Monitor for VMs

[Azure Monitor for VMs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/insights/vminsights-overview) monitors your Azure virtual machines (VM) at scale by analyzing the performance and health of your Windows and Linux VMs, including their different processes and interconnected dependencies on other resources and external processes. The solution includes support for monitoring performance and application dependencies for VMs hosted on-premises or another cloud provider.

### Monitoring solutions

[Monitoring solutions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/insights/solutions) in Azure Monitor are packaged sets of logic that provide insights for a particular application or service. They include logic for collecting monitoring data for the application or service, [queries](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/log-query/log-query-overview) to analyze that data, and [views](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/view-designer) for visualization. Monitoring solutions are [available from Microsoft](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/monitor-reference) and partners to provide monitoring for various Azure services and other applications.

## Responding to critical situations

In addition to allowing you to interactively analyze monitoring data, an effective monitoring solution must be able to proactively respond to critical conditions identified in the data that it collects. This could be sending a text or mail to an administrator responsible for investigating an issue. Or you could launch an automated process that attempts to correct an error condition.

### Alerts

[Alerts in Azure Monitor](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/alerts-overview) proactively notify you of critical conditions and potentially attempt to take corrective action. Alert rules based on metrics provide near real time alerting based on numeric values, while rules based on logs allow for complex logic across data from multiple sources.

Alert rules in Azure Monitor use [action groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/action-groups), which contain unique sets of recipients and actions that can be shared across multiple rules. Based on your requirements, action groups can perform such actions as using webhooks to have alerts start external actions or to integrate with your ITSM tools.

### Autoscale

Autoscale allows you to have the right amount of resources running to handle the load on your application. It allows you to create rules that use metrics collected by Azure Monitor to determine when to automatically add resources to handle increases in load and also save money by removing resources that are sitting idle. You specify a minimum and maximum number of instances and the logic for when to increase or decrease resources.

## Visualizing monitoring data

[Visualizations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/visualizations) such as charts and tables are effective tools for summarizing monitoring data and presenting it to different audiences. Azure Monitor has its own features for visualizing monitoring data and leverages other Azure services for publishing it to different audiences.

### Dashboards

[Azure dashboards](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-portal/azure-portal-dashboards) allow you to combine different kinds of data, including both metrics and logs, into a single pane in the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/). You can optionally share the dashboard with other Azure users. Elements throughout Azure Monitor can be added to an Azure dashboard in addition to the output of any log query or metrics chart. For example, you could create a dashboard that combines tiles that show a graph of metrics, a table of activity logs, a usage chart from Application Insights, and the output of a log query.

### Views

[Views](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/view-designer) visually present log data in Azure Monitor. Each view includes a single tile that drills down to a combination of visualizations such as bar and line charts in addition to lists summarizing critical data. Monitoring solutions include views that summarize data for a particular application, and you can create your own views to present data from any log query. Like other elements in Azure Monitor, views can be added to Azure dashboards.

### Power BI

[Power BI](https://powerbi.microsoft.com/) is a business analytics service that provides interactive visualizations across a variety of data sources and is an effective means of making data available to others within and outside your organization. You can configure Power BI to [automatically import log data from Azure Monitor](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/powerbi) to take advantage of these additional visualizations.

## Integrate and export data

You'll often have the requirement to integrate Azure Monitor with other systems and to build custom solutions that use your monitoring data. Other Azure services work with Azure Monitor to provide this integration.

### Event Hub

[Azure Event Hubs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/event-hubs/) is a streaming platform and event ingestion service that can transform and store data using any real-time analytics provider or batching/storage adapters. Use Event Hubs to [stream Azure Monitor data](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-monitor/platform/stream-monitoring-data-event-hubs) to partner SIEM and monitoring tools.

### Logic Apps

[Logic Apps](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/logic-apps) is a service that allows you to automate tasks and business processes using workflows that integrate with different systems and services. Activities are available that read and write metrics and logs in Azure Monitor, which allows you to build workflows integrating with a variety of other systems.

### API

Multiple APIs are available to read and write metrics and logs to and from Azure Monitor in addition to accessing generated alerts. You can also configure and retrieve alerts. This provides you with essentially unlimited possibilities to build custom solutions that integrate with Azure Monitor.

**SERVICE BUS**

Microsoft Azure Service Bus is a fully managed enterprise integration message broker. Service Bus can decouple applications and services. Service Bus offers a reliable and secure platform for asynchronous transfer of data and state.

Data is transferred between different applications and services using messages. A message is in binary format and can contain JSON, XML, or just text. For more information, see [Integration Services](https://azure.com/integration).

Some common messaging scenarios are:

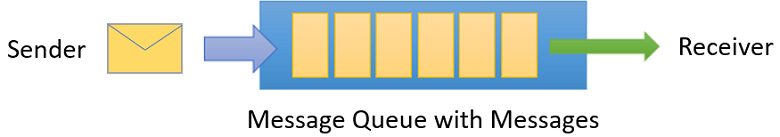
* Messaging. Transfer business data, such as sales or purchase orders, journals, or inventory movements.
* Decouple applications. Improve reliability and scalability of applications and services. Client and service don't have to be online at the same time.
* Topics and subscriptions. Enable 1:n relationships between publishers and subscribers.
* Message sessions. Implement workflows that require message ordering or message deferral.

## Namespaces

A namespace is a container for all messaging components. Multiple queues and topics can be in a single namespace, and namespaces often serve as application containers.

## Queues

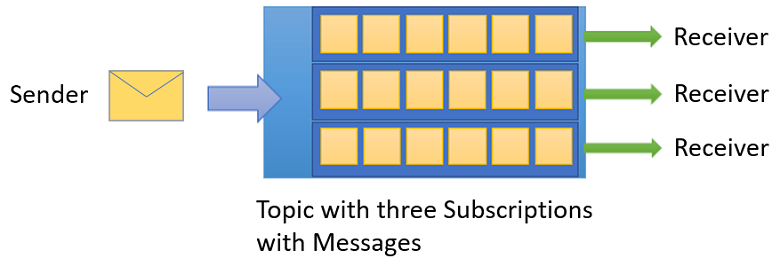
Messages are sent to and received from queues. Queues store messages until the receiving application is available to receive and process them.



Messages in queues are ordered and timestamped on arrival. Once accepted, the message is held safely in redundant storage. Messages are delivered in pull mode, only delivering messages when requested.

## Topics

You can also use topics to send and receive messages. While a queue is often used for point-to-point communication, topics are useful in publish/subscribe scenarios.



Topics can have multiple, independent subscriptions. A subscriber to a topic can receive a copy of each message sent to that topic. Subscriptions are named entities. Subscriptions persist, but can expire or autodelete.

You may not want individual subscriptions to receive all messages sent to a topic. If so, you can use rules and filters to define conditions that trigger optional actions. You can filter specified messages and set or modify message properties. For more information, see [Topic filters and actions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/topic-filters).

## Advanced features

Service Bus includes advanced features that enable you to solve more complex messaging problems. The following sections describe several of these features.

### Message sessions

To create a first-in, first-out (FIFO) guarantee in Service Bus, use sessions. Message sessions enable joint and ordered handling of unbounded sequences of related messages. For more information, see [Message sessions: first in, first out (FIFO)](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/message-sessions).

### Autoforwarding

The autoforwarding feature chains a queue or subscription to another queue or topic. They must be part of the same namespace. With autoforwarding, Service Bus automatically removes messages from a queue or subscription and puts them in a different queue or topic. For more information, see [Chaining Service Bus entities with autoforwarding](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-auto-forwarding).

### Dead-letter queue

Service Bus supports a dead-letter queue (DLQ). A DLQ holds messages that can't be delivered to any receiver. It holds messages that can't be processed. Service Bus lets you remove messages from the DLQ and inspect them. For more information, see [Overview of Service Bus dead-letter queues](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-dead-letter-queues).

### Scheduled delivery

You can submit messages to a queue or topic for delayed processing. You can schedule a job to become available for processing by a system at a certain time. For more information, see [Scheduled messages](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/message-sequencing#scheduled-messages).

### Message deferral

A queue or subscription client can defer retrieval of a message until a later time. This deferral might be because of special circumstances in the application. The message remains in the queue or subscription, but it's set aside. For more information, see [Message deferral](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/message-deferral).

### Batching

Client-side batching enables a queue or topic client to delay sending a message for a certain period of time. If the client sends additional messages during this time period, it transmits the messages in a single batch. For more information, see [Client-side batching](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-performance-improvements#client-side-batching).

### Transactions

A transaction groups two or more operations together into an execution scope. Service Bus supports grouping operations against a single messaging entity within the scope of a single transaction. A message entity can be a queue, topic, or subscription. For more information, see [Overview of Service Bus transaction processing](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-transactions).

### Filtering and actions

Subscribers can define which messages they want to receive from a topic. These messages are specified in the form of one or more named subscription rules. For each matching rule condition, the subscription produces a copy of the message, which can be differently annotated for each matching rule. For more information, see [Topic filters and actions](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/topic-filters).

### Autodelete on idle

Autodelete on idle enables you to specify an idle interval after which a queue is automatically deleted. The minimum duration is 5 minutes. For more information, see the [QueueDescription.AutoDeleteOnIdle Property](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/dotnet/api/microsoft.servicebus.messaging.queuedescription.autodeleteonidle).

### Duplicate detection

An error could cause the client to have a doubt about the outcome of a send operation. Duplicate detection enables the sender to resend the same message. Another option is for the queue or topic to discard any duplicate copies. For more information, see [Duplicate detection](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/duplicate-detection).

### Security protocols

Service Bus supports security protocols such as [Shared Access Signatures](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-sas) (SAS), [Azure role-based access control (Azure RBAC)](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/authenticate-application) and [Managed identities for Azure resources](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-managed-service-identity).

### Geo-disaster recovery

When Azure regions or datacenters experience downtime, Geo-disaster recovery enables data processing to continue operating in a different region or datacenter. For more information, see [Azure Service Bus Geo-disaster recovery](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-geo-dr).

### Security

Service Bus supports standard [AMQP 1.0](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/service-bus-messaging/service-bus-amqp-overview) and [HTTP/REST](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/servicebus/) protocols.

## Client libraries : Service Bus supports client libraries for [.NET](https://github.com/Azure/azure-service-bus-dotnet/tree/master), [Java](https://github.com/Azure/azure-service-bus-java/tree/master), and [JMS](https://github.com/Azure/azure-service-bus/tree/master/samples/Java/qpid-jms-client).

## Integration

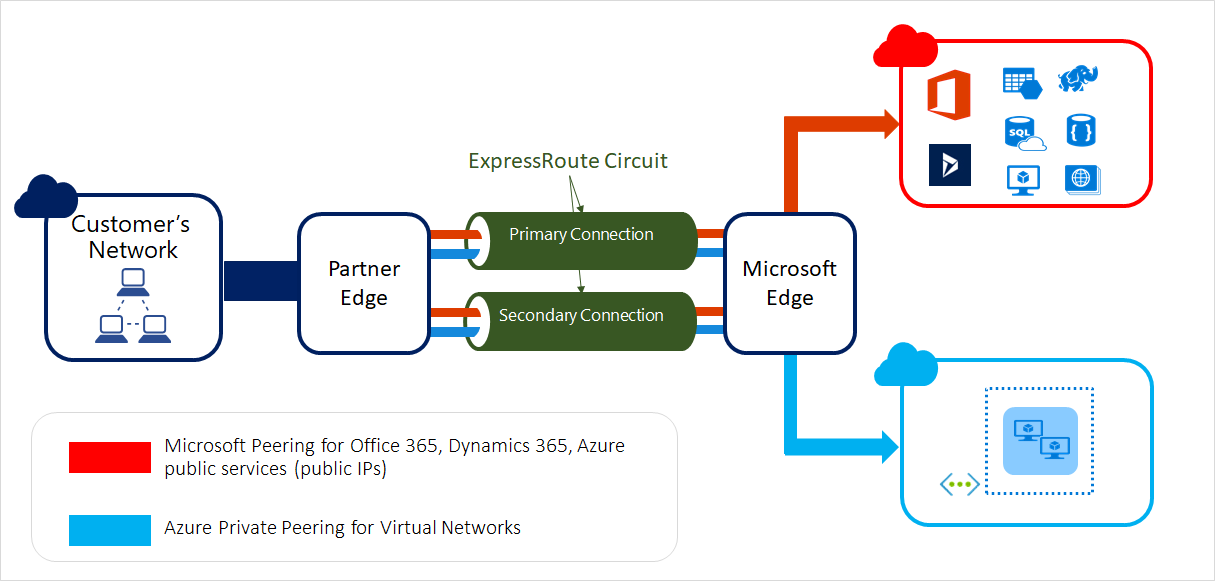
Service Bus fully integrates with the following Azure services:

* [Event Grid](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/event-grid/)
* [Logic Apps](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/logic-apps/)
* [Azure Functions](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/functions/)
* [Dynamics 365](https://dynamics.microsoft.com/)
* [Azure Stream Analytics](https://azure.microsoft.com/services/stream-analytics/)

**AZURE EXPRESSROUTES**

ExpressRoute lets you extend your on-premises networks into the Microsoft cloud over a private connection with the help of a connectivity provider. With ExpressRoute, you can establish connections to Microsoft cloud services, such as Microsoft Azure and Microsoft 365.

Connectivity can be from an any-to-any (IP VPN) network, a point-to-point Ethernet network, or a virtual cross-connection through a connectivity provider at a colocation facility. ExpressRoute connections don't go over the public Internet. This allows ExpressRoute connections to offer more reliability, faster speeds, consistent latencies, and higher security than typical connections over the Internet. For information on how to connect your network to Microsoft using ExpressRoute, see [ExpressRoute connectivity models](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-connectivity-models).



## Key benefits

* Layer 3 connectivity between your on-premises network and the Microsoft Cloud through a connectivity provider. Connectivity can be from an any-to-any (IPVPN) network, a point-to-point Ethernet connection, or through a virtual cross-connection via an Ethernet exchange.
* Connectivity to Microsoft cloud services across all regions in the geopolitical region.
* Global connectivity to Microsoft services across all regions with the ExpressRoute premium add-on.
* Dynamic routing between your network and Microsoft via BGP.
* Built-in redundancy in every peering location for higher reliability.
* Connection uptime [SLA](https://azure.microsoft.com/support/legal/sla/).
* QoS support for Skype for Business.

For more information, see the [ExpressRoute FAQ](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-faqs).

## Features

### Layer 3 connectivity

Microsoft uses BGP, an industry standard dynamic routing protocol, to exchange routes between your on-premises network, your instances in Azure, and Microsoft public addresses. We establish multiple BGP sessions with your network for different traffic profiles. More details can be found in the [ExpressRoute circuit and routing domains](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-circuit-peerings) article.

### Redundancy

Each ExpressRoute circuit consists of two connections to two Microsoft Enterprise edge routers (MSEEs) at an [ExpressRoute Location](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-locations#expressroute-locations) from the connectivity provider/your network edge. Microsoft requires dual BGP connection from the connectivity provider/your network edge – one to each MSEE. You may choose not to deploy redundant devices/Ethernet circuits at your end. However, connectivity providers use redundant devices to ensure that your connections are handed off to Microsoft in a redundant manner. A redundant Layer 3 connectivity configuration is a requirement for our [SLA](https://azure.microsoft.com/support/legal/sla/) to be valid.

### Connectivity to Microsoft cloud services

ExpressRoute connections enable access to the following services:

* Microsoft Azure services
* Microsoft 365 services

**Note**

Microsoft 365 was created to be accessed securely and reliably via the Internet. Because of this, we recommend ExpressRoute for specific scenarios. For information about using ExpressRoute to access Microsoft 365, visit [**Azure ExpressRoute for Microsoft 365**](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoft-365/enterprise/azure-expressroute).

For a detailed list of services supported over ExpressRoute, visit the [ExpressRoute FAQ](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-faqs) page.

### Connectivity to all regions within a geopolitical region

You can connect to Microsoft in one of our [peering locations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-locations) and access regions within the geopolitical region.

For example, if you connect to Microsoft in Amsterdam through ExpressRoute. You'll have access to all Microsoft cloud services hosted in Northern and Western Europe. For an overview of the geopolitical regions, the associated Microsoft cloud regions, and corresponding ExpressRoute peering locations, see the [ExpressRoute partners and peering locations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-locations) article.

### Global connectivity with ExpressRoute Premium

You can enable [ExpressRoute Premium](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-faqs) to extend connectivity across geopolitical boundaries. For example, if you connect to Microsoft in Amsterdam through ExpressRoute you'll have access to all Microsoft cloud services hosted in all regions across the world. You can also access services deployed in South America or Australia the same way you access North and West Europe regions. National clouds are excluded.

### Local connectivity with ExpressRoute Local

You can transfer data cost-effectively by enabling the [Local SKU](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-faqs). With Local SKU, you can bring your data to an ExpressRoute location near the Azure region you want. With Local, Data transfer is included in the ExpressRoute port charge.

### Across on-premises connectivity with ExpressRoute Global Reach

You can enable ExpressRoute Global Reach to exchange data across your on-premises sites by connecting your ExpressRoute circuits. For example, if you have a private data center in California connected to an ExpressRoute circuit in Silicon Valley and another private data center in Texas connected to an ExpressRoute circuit in Dallas. With ExpressRoute Global Reach, you can connect your private data centers together through these two ExpressRoute circuits. Your cross-data-center traffic will traverse through Microsoft's network.

For more information, see [ExpressRoute Global Reach](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-global-reach).

### Rich connectivity partner ecosystem

ExpressRoute has a constantly growing ecosystem of connectivity providers and systems integrator partners. For the latest information, refer to [ExpressRoute partners and peering locations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-locations).

### Connectivity to national clouds

Microsoft operates isolated cloud environments for special geopolitical regions and customer segments. Refer to the [ExpressRoute partners and peering locations](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-locations) page for a list of national clouds and providers.

### ExpressRoute Direct

ExpressRoute Direct provides customers the opportunity to connect directly into Microsoft’s global network at peering locations strategically distributed across the world. ExpressRoute Direct provides dual 100-Gbps connectivity, which supports Active/Active connectivity at scale.

Key features that ExpressRoute Direct provides include, but aren't limited to:

* Massive Data Ingestion into services like Storage and Cosmos DB
* Physical isolation for industries that are regulated and require dedicated and isolated connectivity, such as: Banking, Government, and Retail
* Granular control of circuit distribution based on business unit

For more information, see [About ExpressRoute Direct](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-erdirect-about).

### Bandwidth options

You can purchase ExpressRoute circuits for a wide range of bandwidths. The supported bandwidths are listed as followed. Be sure to check with your connectivity provider to determine the bandwidths they support.

* 50 Mbps
* 100 Mbps
* 200 Mbps
* 500 Mbps
* 1 Gbps
* 2 Gbps
* 5 Gbps
* 10 Gbps

### Dynamic scaling of bandwidth

You can increase the ExpressRoute circuit bandwidth (on a best effort basis) without having to tear down your connections. For more information, see [Modifying an ExpressRoute circuit](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-howto-circuit-portal-resource-manager#modify).

### Flexible billing models

You can pick a billing model that works best for you. Choose between the billing models listed as followed. For more information, see [ExpressRoute FAQ](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/expressroute/expressroute-faqs).

* **Unlimited data**. Billing is based on a monthly fee; all inbound and outbound data transfer is included free of charge.
* **Metered data**. Billing is based on a monthly fee; all inbound data transfer is free of charge. Outbound data transfer is charged per GB of data transfer. Data transfer rates vary by region.
* **ExpressRoute premium add-on**. ExpressRoute premium is an add-on to the ExpressRoute circuit. The ExpressRoute premium add-on provides the following capabilities:
  + Increased route limits for Azure public and Azure private peering from 4,000 routes to 10,000 routes.
  + Global connectivity for services. An ExpressRoute circuit created in any region (excluding national clouds) will have access to resources across every other region in the world. For example, a virtual network created in West Europe can be accessed through an ExpressRoute circuit provisioned in Silicon Valley.
  + Increased number of VNet links per ExpressRoute circuit from 10 to a larger limit, depending on the bandwidth of the circuit

**SLA For VMs**

* For all Virtual Machines that have two or more instances deployed across two or more Availability Zones in the same Azure region, we guarantee you will have Virtual Machine Connectivity to at least one instance at least 99.99% of the time.
* For all Virtual Machines that have two or more instances deployed in the same Availability Set or in the same Dedicated Host Group, we guarantee you will have Virtual Machine Connectivity to at least one instance at least 99.95% of the time.
* For any Single Instance Virtual Machine using Premium SSD or Ultra Disk for all Operating System Disks and Data Disks, we guarantee you will have Virtual Machine Connectivity of at least 99.9%.
* For any Single Instance Virtual Machine using Standard SSD Managed Disks for Operating System Disk and Data Disks, we guarantee you will have Virtual Machine Connectivity of at least 99.5%.
* For any Single Instance Virtual Machine using Standard HDD Managed Disks for Operating System Disks and Data Disks, we guarantee you will have Virtual Machine Connectivity of at least 95%.

**RBAC**

Access management for cloud resources is a critical function for any organization that is using the cloud. Azure role-based access control (Azure RBAC) helps you manage who has access to Azure resources, what they can do with those resources, and what areas they have access to.

Azure RBAC is an authorization system built on [Azure Resource Manager](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/overview) that provides fine-grained access management of Azure resources.

## What can I do with Azure RBAC?

Here are some examples of what you can do with Azure RBAC:

* Allow one user to manage virtual machines in a subscription and another user to manage virtual networks
* Allow a DBA group to manage SQL databases in a subscription
* Allow a user to manage all resources in a resource group, such as virtual machines, websites, and subnets
* Allow an application to access all resources in a resource group

## How Azure RBAC works

The way you control access to resources using Azure RBAC is to create role assignments. This is a key concept to understand – it's how permissions are enforced. A role assignment consists of three elements: security principal, role definition, and scope.

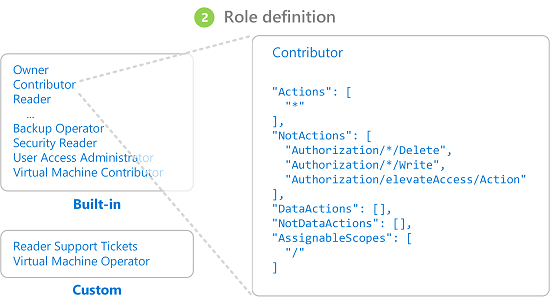
### Security principal

A security principal is an object that represents a user, group, service principal, or managed identity that is requesting access to Azure resources. You can assign a role to any of these security principals.



### Role definition

A role definition is a collection of permissions. It's typically just called a role. A role definition lists the operations that can be performed, such as read, write, and delete. Roles can be high-level, like owner, or specific, like virtual machine reader.



Azure includes several [built-in roles](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles) that you can use. For example, the [Virtual Machine Contributor](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#virtual-machine-contributor) role allows a user to create and manage virtual machines. If the built-in roles don't meet the specific needs of your organization, you can create your own [Azure custom roles](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/custom-roles).

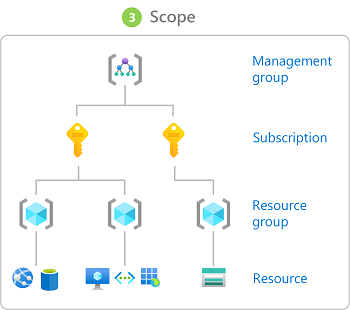
This video provides a quick overview of built-in roles and custom roles.

Azure has data operations that enable you to grant access to data within an object. For example, if a user has read data access to a storage account, then they can read the blobs or messages within that storage account.

### Scope

Scope is the set of resources that the access applies to. When you assign a role, you can further limit the actions allowed by defining a scope. This is helpful if you want to make someone a [Website Contributor](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#website-contributor), but only for one resource group.

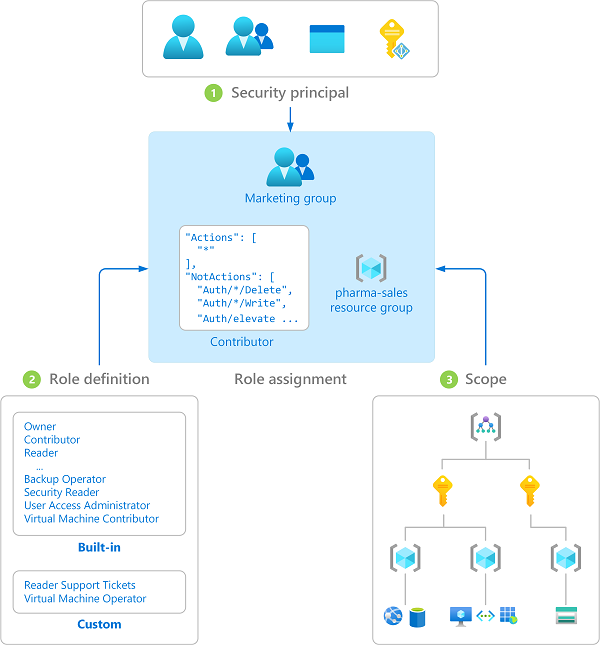
In Azure, you can specify a scope at four levels: [management group](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/management-groups/overview), subscription, [resource group](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/overview#resource-groups), or resource. Scopes are structured in a parent-child relationship. You can assign roles at any of these levels of scope.



### Role assignments

A role assignment is the process of attaching a role definition to a user, group, service principal, or managed identity at a particular scope for the purpose of granting access. Access is granted by creating a role assignment, and access is revoked by removing a role assignment.

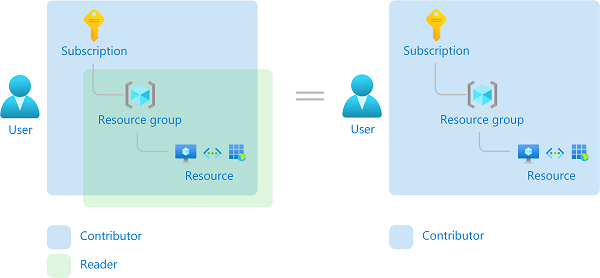
The following diagram shows an example of a role assignment. In this example, the Marketing group has been assigned the [Contributor](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/built-in-roles#contributor) role for the pharma-sales resource group. This means that users in the Marketing group can create or manage any Azure resource in the pharma-sales resource group. Marketing users do not have access to resources outside the pharma-sales resource group, unless they are part of another role assignment.



You can create role assignments using the Azure portal, Azure CLI, Azure PowerShell, Azure SDKs, or REST APIs.

## Multiple role assignments

So what happens if you have multiple overlapping role assignments? Azure RBAC is an additive model, so your effective permissions are the sum of your role assignments. Consider the following example where a user is granted the Contributor role at the subscription scope and the Reader role on a resource group. The sum of the Contributor permissions and the Reader permissions is effectively the Contributor role for the resource group. Therefore, in this case, the Reader role assignment has no impact.



## Deny assignments

Previously, Azure RBAC was an allow-only model with no deny, but now Azure RBAC supports deny assignments in a limited way. Similar to a role assignment, a deny assignment attaches a set of deny actions to a user, group, service principal, or managed identity at a particular scope for the purpose of denying access. A role assignment defines a set of actions that are allowed, while a deny assignment defines a set of actions that are not allowed. In other words, deny assignments block users from performing specified actions even if a role assignment grants them access. Deny assignments take precedence over role assignments.

## How Azure RBAC determines if a user has access to a resource

The following are the high-level steps that Azure RBAC uses to determine if you have access to a resource on the management plane. This is helpful to understand if you are trying to troubleshoot an access issue.

1. A user (or service principal) acquires a token for Azure Resource Manager.

The token includes the user's group memberships (including transitive group memberships).

1. The user makes a REST API call to Azure Resource Manager with the token attached.
2. Azure Resource Manager retrieves all the role assignments and deny assignments that apply to the resource upon which the action is being taken.
3. Azure Resource Manager narrows the role assignments that apply to this user or their group and determines what roles the user has for this resource.
4. Azure Resource Manager determines if the action in the API call is included in the roles the user has for this resource.
5. If the user doesn't have a role with the action at the requested scope, access is not granted. Otherwise, Azure Resource Manager checks if a deny assignment applies.
6. If a deny assignment applies, access is blocked. Otherwise access is granted.

**SOME NETWORKING STUFF**

## Create a local network gateway

The local network gateway is a specific object that represents your on-premises location (the site) for routing purposes. You give the site a name by which Azure can refer to it, then specify the IP address of the on-premises VPN device to which you will create a connection. You also specify the IP address prefixes that will be routed through the VPN gateway to the VPN device. The address prefixes you specify are the prefixes located on your on-premises network. If your on-premises network changes or you need to change the public IP address for the VPN device, you can easily update the values later.

Create a local network gateway using the following values:

* **Name:** Site1
* **Resource Group:** TestRG1
* **Location:** East US

1. From the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/), in **Search resources, services, and docs (G+/)** type **local network gateway**. Locate **local network gateway** under **Marketplace** in the search results and select it. This opens the **Create local network gateway** page.
2. On the **Create local network gateway page**, specify the values for your local network gateway.
   * **Name:** Specify a name for your local network gateway object.
   * **Endpoint:** Select the endpoint type for the on-premises VPN device - **IP address** or **FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name)**.
     + **IP address**: If you have a static public IP address allocated from your Internet service provider for your VPN device, select the IP address option and fill in the IP address as shown in the example. This is the public IP address of the VPN device that you want Azure VPN gateway to connect to. If you don't have the IP address right now, you can use the values shown in the example, but you'll need to go back and replace your placeholder IP address with the public IP address of your VPN device. Otherwise, Azure will not be able to connect.
     + **FQDN**: If you have a dynamic public IP address that could change after certain period of time, usually determined by your Internet service provider, you can use a constant DNS name with a Dynamic DNS service to point to your current public IP address of your VPN device. Your Azure VPN gateway will resolve the FQDN to determine the public IP address to connect to.
   * **Address Space** refers to the address ranges for the network that this local network represents. You can add multiple address space ranges. Make sure that the ranges you specify here do not overlap with ranges of other networks that you want to connect to. Azure will route the address range that you specify to the on-premises VPN device IP address. Use your own values here if you want to connect to your on-premises site, not the values shown in the example.
   * **Configure BGP settings:** Use only when configuring BGP. Otherwise, don't select this.
   * **Subscription:** Verify that the correct subscription is showing.
   * **Resource Group:** Select the resource group that you want to use. You can either create a new resource group, or select one that you have already created.
   * **Location:** The location is the same as **Region** in other settings. Select the location that this object will be created in. You may want to select the same location that your VNet resides in, but you are not required to do so.
3. When you have finished specifying the values, select the **Create** button at the bottom of the page to create the local network gateway.

**Configure your VPN device**

Site-to-Site connections to an on-premises network require a VPN device. In this step, you configure your VPN device. When configuring your VPN device, you need the following values:

* A shared key. This is the same shared key that you specify when creating your Site-to-Site VPN connection. In our examples, we use a basic shared key. We recommend that you generate a more complex key to use.
* The Public IP address of your virtual network gateway. You can view the public IP address by using the Azure portal, PowerShell, or CLI. To find the Public IP address of your VPN gateway using the Azure portal, navigate to **Virtual network gateways**, then select the name of your gateway.

## Create a VPN connection

Create the Site-to-Site VPN connection between your virtual network gateway and your on-premises VPN device.

Create a connection using the following values:

* **Local network gateway name:** Site1
* **Connection name:** VNet1toSite1
* **Shared key:** For this example, we use abc123. But, you can use whatever is compatible with your VPN hardware. The important thing is that the values match on both sides of the connection.

1. Open the page for your virtual network gateway. You can navigate to the gateway by going to **Name of your VNet -> Overview -> Connected devices -> Name of your gateway**, although there are multiple other ways to navigate as well.
2. On the page for the gateway, select **Connections**. At the top of the Connections page, select **+Add** to open the **Add connection** page.
3. On the **Add connection** page, configure the values for your connection.
   * **Name:** Name your connection.
   * **Connection type:** Select **Site-to-site (IPSec)**.
   * **Virtual network gateway:** The value is fixed because you are connecting from this gateway.
   * **Local network gateway:** Select **Choose a local network gateway** and select the local network gateway that you want to use.
   * **Shared Key:** the value here must match the value that you are using for your local on-premises VPN device. The example uses 'abc123', but you can (and should) use something more complex. The important thing is that the value you specify here must be the same value that you specify when configuring your VPN device.
   * Leave **Use Azure Private IP Address** unchecked.
   * Leave **Enable BGP** unchecked.
   * Select **IKEv2**.
   * The remaining values for **Subscription**, **Resource Group**, and **Location** are fixed.
4. Select **OK** to create your connection. You'll see Creating Connection flash on the screen.
5. You can view the connection in the **Connections** page of the virtual network gateway. The Status will go from Unknown to Connecting, and then to Succeeded.

## Verify the VPN connection

In the Azure portal, you can view the connection status of a Resource Manager VPN Gateway by navigating to the connection. The following steps show one way to navigate to your connection and verify.

1. In the [Azure portal](https://portal.azure.com/) menu, select **All resources** or search for and select **All resources** from any page.
2. Select to your virtual network gateway.
3. On the blade for your virtual network gateway, click **Connections**. You can see the status of each connection.
4. Click the name of the connection that you want to verify to open **Essentials**. In Essentials, you can view more information about your connection. The **Status** is 'Succeeded' and 'Connected' when you have made a successful connection.

## How to connect to a virtual machine

You can connect to a VM that is deployed to your VNet by creating a Remote Desktop Connection to your VM. The best way to initially verify that you can connect to your VM is to connect by using its private IP address, rather than computer name. That way, you are testing to see if you can connect, not whether name resolution is configured properly.

1. Locate the private IP address. You can find the private IP address of a VM by either looking at the properties for the VM in the Azure portal, or by using PowerShell.
   * Azure portal - Locate your virtual machine in the Azure portal. View the properties for the VM. The private IP address is listed.
   * PowerShell - Use the example to view a list of VMs and private IP addresses from your resource groups. You don't need to modify this example before using it.

Azure PowerShellCopy

Try It

$VMs = Get-AzVM

$Nics = Get-AzNetworkInterface | Where VirtualMachine -ne $null

foreach($Nic in $Nics)

{

$VM = $VMs | Where-Object -Property Id -eq $Nic.VirtualMachine.Id

$Prv = $Nic.IpConfigurations | Select-Object -ExpandProperty PrivateIpAddress

$Alloc = $Nic.IpConfigurations | Select-Object -ExpandProperty PrivateIpAllocationMethod

Write-Output "$($VM.Name): $Prv,$Alloc"

}

1. Verify that you are connected to your VNet using the Point-to-Site VPN connection.
2. Open **Remote Desktop Connection** by typing "RDP" or "Remote Desktop Connection" in the search box on the taskbar, then select Remote Desktop Connection. You can also open Remote Desktop Connection using the 'mstsc' command in PowerShell.
3. In Remote Desktop Connection, enter the private IP address of the VM. You can click "Show Options" to adjust additional settings, then connect.

## How to reset a VPN gateway

Resetting an Azure VPN gateway is helpful if you lose cross-premises VPN connectivity on one or more Site-to-Site VPN tunnels. In this situation, your on-premises VPN devices are all working correctly, but are not able to establish IPsec tunnels with the Azure VPN gateways. For steps, see [Reset a VPN gateway](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/vpn-gateway/reset-gateway).

## How to change a gateway SKU (resize a gateway)

For the steps to change a gateway SKU, see [Gateway SKUs](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/vpn-gateway/vpn-gateway-about-vpn-gateway-settings#gwsku).

## How to add an additional connection to a VPN gateway

You can add additional connections, provided that none of the address spaces overlap between connections.

1. To add an additional connection, navigate to the VPN gateway, then select **Connections** to open the Connections page.
2. Select **+Add** to add your connection. Adjust the connection type to reflect either VNet-to-VNet (if connecting to another VNet gateway), or Site-to-site.
3. If you are connecting using Site-to-site and you have not already created a local network gateway for the site you want to connect to, you can create a new one.
4. Specify the shared key that you want to use, then select **OK** to create the connection.

**AZURE COST MANAGEMENT AND BILLING**

By using the Microsoft cloud, you can significantly improve the technical performance of your business workloads. It can also reduce your costs and the overhead required to manage organizational assets. However, the business opportunity creates a risk because of the potential for waste and inefficiencies that are introduced into your cloud deployments. Azure Cost Management + Billing is a suite of tools provided by Microsoft that help you analyze, manage, and optimize the costs of your workloads. Using the suite helps ensure that your organization is taking advantage of the benefits provided by the cloud.

You can think of your Azure workloads like the lights in your home. When you leave to go out for the day, are you leaving the lights on? Could you use different bulbs that are more efficient to help reduce your monthly energy bill? Do you have more lights in one room than are needed? You can use Azure Cost Management + Billing to apply a similar thought process to the workloads used by your organization.

With Azure products and services, you only pay for what you use. As you create and use Azure resources, you’re charged for the resources. Because of the deployment ease for new resources, the costs of your workloads can jump significantly without proper analysis and monitoring. You use Azure Cost Management + Billing features to:

* Conduct billing administrative tasks such as paying your bill
* Manage billing access to costs
* Download cost and usage data that was used to generate your monthly invoice
* Proactively apply data analysis to your costs
* Set spending thresholds
* Identify opportunities for workload changes that can optimize your spending

To learn more about how to approach cost management as an organization, take a look at the [Azure Cost Management best practices](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-gb/azure/cost-management-billing/costs/cost-mgt-best-practices) article.

## Understand Azure Billing

Azure Billing features are used to review your invoiced costs and manage access to billing information. In larger organizations, procurement and finance teams usually conduct billing tasks.

A billing account is created when you sign up to use Azure. You use your billing account to manage your invoices, payments, and track costs. You can have access to multiple billing accounts. For example, you might have signed up for Azure for your personal projects. So, you might have an individual Azure subscription with a billing account. You could also have access through your organization's Enterprise Agreement or Microsoft Customer Agreement. For each scenario, you would have a separate billing account.

### Billing accounts

The Azure portal currently supports the following types of billing accounts:

* **Microsoft Online Services Program**: An individual billing account for a Microsoft Online Services Program is created when you sign up for Azure through the Azure website. For example, when you sign up for an Azure Free Account, account with pay-as-you-go rates or as a Visual studio subscriber.
* **Enterprise Agreement**: A billing account for an Enterprise Agreement is created when your organization signs an Enterprise Agreement (EA) to use Azure.
* **Microsoft Customer Agreement**: A billing account for a Microsoft Customer Agreement is created when your organization works with a Microsoft representative to sign a Microsoft Customer Agreement. Some customers in select regions, who sign up through the Azure website for an account with pay-as-you-go rates or upgrade their Azure Free Account may have a billing account for a Microsoft Customer Agreement as well.

### Scopes for billing accounts

A scope is a node in a billing account that you use to view and manage billing. It's where you manage billing data, payments, invoices, and conduct general account management.

#### Microsoft Online Services Program

| **MICROSOFT ONLINE SERVICES PROGRAM** | |
| --- | --- |
| **Scope** | **Definition** |
| Billing account | Represents a single owner (Account administrator) for one or more Azure subscriptions. An Account Administrator is authorized to do various billing tasks like create subscriptions, view invoices or change the billing for subscriptions. |
| Subscription | Represents a grouping of Azure resources. An invoice is generated at the subscription scope. It has its own payment methods that are used to pay its invoice. |

#### Enterprise Agreement

| **ENTERPRISE AGREEMENT** | |
| --- | --- |
| **Scope** | **Definition** |
| Billing account | Represents an Enterprise Agreement enrollment. Invoice is generated at the billing account scope. It's structured using departments and enrollment accounts. |
| Department | Optional grouping of enrollment accounts. |
| Enrollment account | Represents a single account owner. Azure subscriptions are created under the enrollment account scope. |

#### Microsoft Customer Agreement

| **MICROSOFT CUSTOMER AGREEMENT** | |
| --- | --- |
| **Scope** | **Tasks** |
| Billing account | Represents a customer agreement for multiple Microsoft products and services. The billing account is structured using billing profiles and invoice sections. |
| Billing profile | Represents an invoice and its payment methods. Invoice is generated at this scope. The billing profile can have multiple invoice sections. |
| Invoice section | Represents a group of costs in an invoice. Subscriptions and other purchases are associated to the invoice section scope. |

## Understand Azure Cost Management

Although related, billing differs from cost management. Billing is the process of invoicing customers for goods or services and managing the commercial relationship.

Cost Management shows organizational cost and usage patterns with advanced analytics. Reports in Cost Management show the usage-based costs consumed by Azure services and third-party Marketplace offerings. Costs are based on negotiated prices and factor in reservation and Azure Hybrid Benefit discounts. Collectively, the reports show your internal and external costs for usage and Azure Marketplace charges. Other charges, such as reservation purchases, support, and taxes aren't yet shown in reports. The reports help you understand your spending and resource use and can help find spending anomalies. Predictive analytics are also available. Cost Management uses Azure management groups, budgets, and recommendations to show clearly how your expenses are organized and how you might reduce costs.

You can use the Azure portal or various APIs for export automation to integrate cost data with external systems and processes. Automated billing data export and scheduled reports are also available.

### Plan and control expenses

The ways that Cost Management help you plan for and control your costs include: Cost analysis, budgets, recommendations, and exporting cost management data.

You use cost analysis to explore and analyze your organizational costs. You can view aggregated costs by organization to understand where costs are accrued and to identify spending trends. And you can see accumulated costs over time to estimate monthly, quarterly, or even yearly cost trends against a budget.

Budgets help you plan for and meet financial accountability in your organization. They help prevent cost thresholds or limits from being surpassed. Budgets can also help you inform others about their spending to proactively manage costs. And with them, you can see how spending progresses over time.

Recommendations show how you can optimize and improve efficiency by identifying idle and underutilized resources. Or, they can show less expensive resource options. When you act on the recommendations, you change the way you use your resources to save money. To act, you first view cost optimization recommendations to view potential usage inefficiencies. Next, you act on a recommendation to modify your Azure resource use to a more cost-effective option. Then you verify the action to make sure that the change you make is successful.

If you use external systems to access or review cost management data, you can easily export the data from Azure. And you can set a daily scheduled export in CSV format and store the data files in Azure storage. Then, you can access the data from your external system.

### Cloudyn deprecation

Cloudyn is an Azure service related to Cost Management that is being deprecated by the end of 2020. Existing Cloudyn features are being integrated directly into the Azure portal wherever possible. No new customers are being onboarded at this time, but support will remain for the product until it is fully deprecated.

### Additional Azure tools

Azure has other tools that aren't a part of the Azure Cost Management + Billing feature set. However, they play an important role in the cost management process. To learn more about these tools, see the following links.

* [Azure Pricing Calculator](https://azure.microsoft.com/pricing/calculator/) - Use this tool to estimate your up-front cloud costs.
* [Azure Migrate](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/migrate/migrate-services-overview) - Assess your current datacenter workload for insights about what's needed from an Azure replacement solution.
* [Azure Advisor](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-gb/azure/advisor/advisor-overview) - Identify unused VMs and receive recommendations about Azure reserved instance purchases.
* [Azure Hybrid Benefit](https://azure.microsoft.com/pricing/hybrid-benefit/) - Use your current on-premises Windows Server or SQL Server licenses for VMs in Azure to save.

**AZURE RESOURCE MANAGER**

Azure Resource Manager is the deployment and management service for Azure. It provides a management layer that enables you to create, update, and delete resources in your Azure account. You use management features, like access control, locks, and tags, to secure and organize your resources after deployment.

To learn about Azure Resource Manager templates, see [Template deployment overview](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/templates/overview).

## Consistent management layer

When a user sends a request from any of the Azure tools, APIs, or SDKs, Resource Manager receives the request. It authenticates and authorizes the request. Resource Manager sends the request to the Azure service, which takes the requested action. Because all requests are handled through the same API, you see consistent results and capabilities in all the different tools.

The following image shows the role Azure Resource Manager plays in handling Azure requests.



All capabilities that are available in the portal are also available through PowerShell, Azure CLI, REST APIs, and client SDKs. Functionality initially released through APIs will be represented in the portal within 180 days of initial release.

## Terminology

If you're new to Azure Resource Manager, there are some terms you might not be familiar with.

* **resource** - A manageable item that is available through Azure. Virtual machines, storage accounts, web apps, databases, and virtual networks are examples of resources. Resource groups, subscriptions, management groups, and tags are also examples of resources.
* **resource group** - A container that holds related resources for an Azure solution. The resource group includes those resources that you want to manage as a group. You decide which resources belong in a resource group based on what makes the most sense for your organization. See [Resource groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/overview#resource-groups).
* **resource provider** - A service that supplies Azure resources. For example, a common resource provider is Microsoft.Compute, which supplies the virtual machine resource. Microsoft.Storage is another common resource provider. See [Resource providers and types](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/resource-providers-and-types).
* **Resource Manager template** - A JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) file that defines one or more resources to deploy to a resource group, subscription, management group, or tenant. The template can be used to deploy the resources consistently and repeatedly. See [Template deployment overview](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/templates/overview).
* **declarative syntax** - Syntax that lets you state "Here is what I intend to create" without having to write the sequence of programming commands to create it. The Resource Manager template is an example of declarative syntax. In the file, you define the properties for the infrastructure to deploy to Azure. See [Template deployment overview](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/templates/overview).

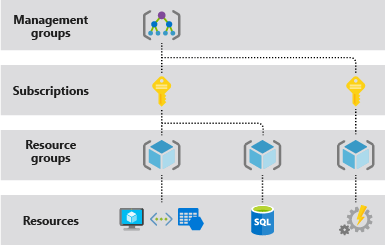
## The benefits of using Resource Manager

With Resource Manager, you can:

* Manage your infrastructure through declarative templates rather than scripts.
* Deploy, manage, and monitor all the resources for your solution as a group, rather than handling these resources individually.
* Redeploy your solution throughout the development lifecycle and have confidence your resources are deployed in a consistent state.
* Define the dependencies between resources so they're deployed in the correct order.
* Apply access control to all services because Azure role-based access control (Azure RBAC) is natively integrated into the management platform.
* Apply tags to resources to logically organize all the resources in your subscription.
* Clarify your organization's billing by viewing costs for a group of resources sharing the same tag.

## Understand scope

Azure provides four levels of scope: [management groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/management-groups/overview), subscriptions, [resource groups](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/overview#resource-groups), and resources. The following image shows an example of these layers.



You apply management settings at any of these levels of scope. The level you select determines how widely the setting is applied. Lower levels inherit settings from higher levels. For example, when you apply a [policy](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/overview) to the subscription, the policy is applied to all resource groups and resources in your subscription. When you apply a policy on the resource group, that policy is applied the resource group and all its resources. However, another resource group doesn't have that policy assignment.

You can deploy templates to tenants, management groups, subscriptions, or resource groups.

## Resource groups

There are some important factors to consider when defining your resource group:

* All the resources in your resource group should share the same lifecycle. You deploy, update, and delete them together. If one resource, such as a server, needs to exist on a different deployment cycle it should be in another resource group.
* Each resource can exist in only one resource group.
* You can add or remove a resource to a resource group at any time.
* You can move a resource from one resource group to another group. For more information, see [Move resources to new resource group or subscription](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/move-resource-group-and-subscription).
* The resources in a resource group can be located in different regions than the resource group.
* When creating a resource group, you need to provide a location for that resource group. You may be wondering, "Why does a resource group need a location? And, if the resources can have different locations than the resource group, why does the resource group location matter at all?" The resource group stores metadata about the resources. When you specify a location for the resource group, you're specifying where that metadata is stored. For compliance reasons, you may need to ensure that your data is stored in a particular region.

If the resource group's region is temporarily unavailable, you can't update resources in the resource group because the metadata is unavailable. The resources in other regions will still function as expected, but you can't update them. For more information about building reliable applications, see [Designing reliable Azure applications](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/architecture/checklist/resiliency-per-service).

* A resource group can be used to scope access control for administrative actions. To manage a resource group, you can assign [Azure Policies](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/governance/policy/overview), [Azure roles](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/role-based-access-control/role-assignments-portal), or [resource locks](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/lock-resources).
* You can [apply tags](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/tag-resources) to a resource group. The resources in the resource group don't inherit those tags.
* A resource can connect to resources in other resource groups. This scenario is common when the two resources are related but don't share the same lifecycle. For example, you can have a web app that connects to a database in a different resource group.
* When you delete a resource group, all resources in the resource group are also deleted. For information about how Azure Resource Manager orchestrates those deletions, see [Azure Resource Manager resource group and resource deletion](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/delete-resource-group).
* You can deploy up to 800 instances of a resource type in each resource group. Some resource types are [exempt from the 800 instance limit](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/resources-without-resource-group-limit).
* Some resources can exist outside of a resource group. These resources are deployed to the [subscription](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/templates/deploy-to-subscription), [management group](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/templates/deploy-to-management-group), or [tenant](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/templates/deploy-to-tenant). Only specific resource types are supported at these scopes.
* To create a resource group, you can use the [portal](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/manage-resource-groups-portal#create-resource-groups), [PowerShell](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/manage-resource-groups-powershell#create-resource-groups), [Azure CLI](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/management/manage-resource-groups-cli#create-resource-groups), or an [Azure Resource Manager (ARM) template](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/azure/azure-resource-manager/templates/deploy-to-subscription#resource-groups).

## Resiliency of Azure Resource Manager

The Azure Resource Manager service is designed for resiliency and continuous availability. Resource Manager and control plane operations (requests sent to management.azure.com) in the REST API are:

* Distributed across regions. Some services are regional.
* Distributed across Availability Zones (as well regions) in locations that have multiple Availability Zones.
* Not dependent on a single logical data center.
* Never taken down for maintenance activities.

This resiliency applies to services that receive requests through Resource Manager. For example, Key Vault benefits from this resiliency.

**CHEAT SHEET**

Master sheet for AZ-900

Understand cloud concepts (15-20%)

Describe the benefits and considerations of using cloud services

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| high availability | Occurs when multiple resources are deployed so that a system is available 99.99% of the time. For example, Azure creates availability sets for VMs to ensure that workloads are available almost all of the time. |
| scalability | Occurs when you can increase the number of VMs as more inbound requests arrives. This represents manual horizontal scaling. |
| elasticity | Occurs when your App Services web app automatically requests more computing resources during a sudden spike in traffic. It allows you to add and remove resources as needed. |
| agility | The ability to rapidly develop, test and launch software applications that drive business growth. Cloud Agility allows them to focus on other issues such as security, monitoring and analysis, instead of provisioning and maintaining the resources. |
| fault tolerance | Occurs when a state-wide power outage in a region does not affect the ability of users to access data that was deployed to a datacenter in that state. Redundancy is built into the Azure architecture so that if a region fails, a paired region at least 300 miles away takes over. |
| disaster recovery | Occurs when you are able to retrieve data after it was lost due to some type of event. |
| economies of scale | Economies of scale is the ability to do things more efficiently or at a lower-cost per unit when operating at a larger scale (e.g. the ability to acquire hardware at a lower cost than if a single user or smaller business were purchasing it, cloud providers can also make deals with local governments and utilities to get tax savings, lower pricing on power, cooling, and high-speed network connectivity between sites). |

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Capital Expenditure (CapEx) | CapEx is the spending of money on physical infrastructure up front, and then deducting that expense from your tax bill over time. CapEx is an upfront cost, which has a value that reduces over time. |
| Operational Expenditure (OpEx) | OpEx is spending money on services or products now and being billed for them now. You can deduct this expense from your tax bill in the same year. |

* *understand the consumption-based model* – With OpEx, there is no upfront cost, you pay for a service or product as you use it.

Describe the differences between Infrastructure-as-a-Service (IaaS), Platform-as-a-Service (PaaS) and Software-as-a-Service (SaaS)

* *describe Infrastructure-as-a-Service (IaaS)* – IaaS quickly scales up and down with demand, letting you pay only for what you use. It helps you avoid the expense and complexity of buying and managing your own physical servers and other datacenter infrastructure. Each resource is offered as a separate service component, and you only need to rent a particular one for as long as you need it. A cloud computing service provider, such as Azure, manages the infrastructure, while you purchase, install, configure, and manage your own software—operating systems, middleware, and applications.
* *describe Platform-as-a-Service (PaaS)* – PaaS is designed to support the complete web application lifecycle: building, testing, deploying, managing, and updating. PaaS allows you to avoid the expense and complexity of buying and managing software licenses, the underlying application infrastructure and middleware, container orchestrators such as Kubernetes, or the development tools and other resources. You manage the applications and services you develop, and the cloud service provider typically manages everything else.
* *describe Software-as-a-Service (SaaS)* – Software as a service (SaaS) allows users to connect to and use cloud-based apps over the Internet. Common examples are email, calendaring, and office tools (such as Microsoft Office 365). SaaS provides a complete software solution that you purchase on a pay-as-you-go basis from a cloud service provider. You rent the use of an app for your organization, and your users connect to it over the Internet, usually with a web browser. All of the underlying infrastructure, middleware, app software, and app data are located in the service provider’s data center. The service provider manages the hardware and software, and with the appropriate service agreement, will ensure the availability and the security of the app and your data as well. SaaS allows your organization to get quickly up and running with an app at minimal upfront cost.
* *compare and contrast the three different service type*

| **Management responsibilities** | **IaaS** | **PaaS** | **SaaS** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Applications | X | X |  |
| Data | X | X |  |
| Runtime | X |  |  |
| Middleware | X |  |  |
| OS | X |  |  |
| Virtualization |  |  |  |
| Servers |  |  |  |
| Storage |  |  |  |
| Networking |  |  |  |

|  | **User** | **Cloud Provider** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| IaaS | Purchase, installation, configuration, and management of their own software operating systems, middleware, and applications. | Responsible for ensuring that the underlying cloud infrastructure (such as virtual machines, storage, and networking) is available for the user. |
| PaaS | Responsible for the development of their own applications. | Responsible for operating system management, and network and service configuration. |
| SaaS | Users just use the application software; they are not responsible for any maintenance or management of that software. | The cloud provider is responsible for the provision, management, and maintenance of the application software. |

Describe the differences between public, private, and hybrid cloud models

* *describe public cloud* – The solution is managed by a provider. Most solutions are based on a multi-tenant model with the solution run in a shared environment with customer data partitioned to provide data security. MSFT Azure is an example of a public cloud.
* *describe private cloud* – An organization builds and maintains its own solution, either in its datacenter or hosted as dedicated resources by a solution provider. Services and infrastructure are hosted on a private network dedicated to that organization only. Government agencies and financial institutions often use the private cloud model. A private cloud requires access to be limited to one tenant A private cloud’s services and infrastructure are maintained on a private network. A company can implement its own private cloud, but it is more common to subscribe to a private cloud hosted and managed by a third-party provider.
* *describe hybrid cloud* – This combines features of public and private clouds. This provides a way to save costs by sharing less-secure solutions needs in a public cloud and keeping high-risk, high-value resources internal to the network. A hybrid cloud provides support for a feature known as cloud bursting, where internal resources meet most needs but cloud-based resources can be added to help support peak use times.
* *compare and contrast the three different cloud models*

|  | **Advantages** | **Disadvantages** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Public | + High Scalability/Agility + PAYG (No CapEx, OpEx model) + Minimal technical knowledge required + Lower costs — no need to purchase hardware or software, and you pay only for the service you use. + No maintenance — your service provider provides the maintenance. + Near-unlimited scalability — on-demand resources are available to meet your business needs. + High reliability — a vast network of servers ensures against failure. | – May not be able to meet specific security requirements |
| Private | + You have complete control + Can meet strict security and compliance requirements + More flexibility — your organization can customize its cloud environment to meet specific business needs. + Improved security — resources are not shared with others, so higher levels of control and security are possible. + High scalability — private clouds still afford the scalability and efficiency of a public cloud. | – Upfront CapEx costs – Owning equipment limits agility to scale – Requires high technical knowledge |
| Hybrid | + Advantages of both Public and Private + Control — your organization can maintain a private infrastructure for sensitive assets. + Flexibility — you can take advantage of additional resources in the public cloud when you need them. + Cost-effectiveness — with the ability to scale to the public cloud, you pay for extra computing power only when needed. + Ease — transitioning to the cloud doesn’t have to be overwhelming because you can migrate gradually — phasing in workloads over time. | – Can be more expensive than selecting one deployment model – Can be more complicated to set up and manage |

Understand core Azure services (30-35%)

Understand the core Azure architectural components

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Regions | A region is a geographical area on the planet containing at least one, but potentially multiple datacenters that are nearby and networked together with a low-latency network. |
| Availability Zones | Availability Zone is an isolated location inside of an Azure Region that has its own independent power source, network, and cooling. The physical and logical separation of Availability Zones within an Azure region protects applications and data from zone-level failures. Availability Zone data transfer pricing is based on Availability Zones. |
| Resource Groups | Resource groups are a fundamental element of the Azure platform. A resource group is a logical container for resources deployed on Azure. |
| Azure Resource Manager | Azure Resource Manager is the interface for managing and organizing cloud resources. Think of Resource Manager as a way to deploy cloud resources. |
| benefits and usage of core Azure architectural components |  |

Describe some of the core products available in Azure

| **Compute** |  |
| --- | --- |
| Virtual Machines | Windows or Linux virtual machines (VMs) hosted in Azure |
| Virtual Machine Scale Sets | Scaling for Windows or Linux VMs hosted in Azure |
| App Service | PaaS offerings to build, deploy, and scale enterprise-grade web, mobile, and API apps. |
| Azure Functions | An event-driven, serverless compute service |
| Azure Container Instances (ACI) | Run Docker containers on-demand in a managed, serverless Azure environment |
| Azure Kubernetes Service (AKS) | to deploy and manage containerized applications |

| **Networking** |  |
| --- | --- |
| Virtual Network | Connects VMs to incoming Virtual Private Network (VPN) connections |
| Load Balancer | Balances inbound and outbound connections to applications or service endpoints. An Open System Interonnection (OSI) layer 4 load balancer that routes traffic based on source adn destination IP addres adn port but does not support routing based on URL. It can be configured to support incoming Internet traffic and internal VM traffic. |
| VPN Gateway | Accesses Azure Virtual Networks through high-performance VPN gateways. Azure VPN Gateway enables you to establish secure, cross-premises connectivity between your virtual network within Azure and on-premises IT infrastructure. |
| Application Gateway | Optimizes app server farm delivery while increasing application security. A web load balancer that supports traffic balancing across multiple Application Zones. It acts as an Open System Interonnection (OSI) level 7 load balancer and lets you route traffic to a server pool based on the incoming URL. Application Gateway can scale automatically based on changing demands. |
| Content Delivery Network | Delivers high-bandwidth content to customers globally. CDN caches information on point-of-presence edge servers, providing for efficient delivery and minimizing latency. It helps to minimize the load on web content servers but does not provide load balancing. |

| **Feature** | **Description** | **When to use** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Azure Files | Access is provided to other VMs, as well as on-prem, through use of the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol, REST, and native client libraries. Provides an SMB interface, client libraries, and a REST interface that allows access from anywhere to stored files. | You want to “lift and shift” an application to the cloud which already uses the native file system APIs to share data between it and other applications running in Azure. You want to store development and debugging tools that need to be accessed from many virtual machines. |
| Azure Blobs | Designed for storing very large quantities of unstructured data. Outside access to application data is supported, but data is stored and accessed as block blobs. Provides client libraries and a REST interface that allows unstructured data to be stored and accessed at a massive scale in block blobs. Also supports Azure Data Lake Storage Gen2 for enterprise big data analytics solutions. | You want your application to support streaming and random access scenarios. You want to be able to access application data from anywhere. You want to build an enterprise data lake on Azure and perform big data analytics. |
| Azure Disks | Stores data as a virtual hard disk (VHD) that is available to the VM to which the disk is attached. This storage product does not provide any outside access. Provides client libraries and a REST interface that allows data to be persistently stored and accessed from an attached virtual hard disk. | You want to lift and shift applications that use native file system APIs to read and write data to persistent disks. You want to store data that is not required to be accessed from outside the virtual machine to which the disk is attached. |
| Archive Storage | This is provided as a low-cost storage option for data that is rarely accessed. | You want to store logs that you don’t need quick access to. |

| **Databases** |  |
| --- | --- |
| CosmosDB | Globally distributed database that supports NoSQL options |
| Azure Database for MySQL | A relational database service powered by the MySQL community edition. It’s a fully managed database as a service offering that can handle mission-critical workloads with predictable performance and dynamic scalability. |
| Azure Database for PostgreSQL | A relational database service based on the open-source Postgres database engine. It’s a fully managed database-as-a-service offering that can handle mission-critical workloads with predictable performance, security, high availability, and dynamic scalability. It’s available in two deployment options, as a single server and as a Hyperscale (Citus) cluster. The Hyperscale (Citus) option horizontally scales queries across multiple machines using sharding, and serves applications that require greater scale and performance. |
| Azure SQL Database | Fully managed relational database with auto-scale, integral intelligence, and robust security |
| Azure Database Migration Service | Migrates your databases to the cloud with no application code changes |

* *describe the Azure Marketplace and its usage scenarios* – The Marketplace allows customers to find, try, purchase, and provision applications and services from hundreds of leading service providers, all certified to run on Azure. Azure Marketplace is a service on Azure that helps connect end users with Microsoft partners, independent software vendors (ISVs), and start-ups that are offering their solutions and services, which are optimized to run on Azure.

Describe some of the solutions available on Azure

Internet of Things (IoT)

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| IoT Hub | A PaaS solution that requires you to write code to connect to IoT devices. |
| IoT Central | A global IoT SaaS solution which provides the means to connect to, monitor, and manage IoT resources. IoT Central is a SaaS solution that does not require any development experience. An application is completely hosted by MSFT, which eliminates the need for you to manage an IoT application. |

Big Data and Analytics

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| SQL Data Warehouse | Run analytics at a massive scale using a cloud-based Enterprise Data Warehouse (EDW) that leverages massive parallel processing (MPP) to run complex queries quickly across petabytes of data. |
| HDInsight | An open-source enterprise-level analytics service that provides for fast and cost-effective processing of massive amounts of data. HDInsight can be used to analyze streaming or historic data. Scenarios for using HDInsight include extract, transform, and load (ETL) batch processing, interactive queries on data warehouses, and processing streams of Internet of Things (IOT) data. HDInsight is a managed Hadoop service that allows you to process batches in Hadoop clusters by using R, Python, SQL, Scala, and Java. |
| Data Lake Analytics | An on-demand analytics service that is optimized for processing data in Data Lake Store. You use U-SQL to process batches. Integrates with Azure Data Lake Store, Azure Storage blobs, Azure SQL Database, and Azure Synapse. Pricing model is per-job. |
| Azure Databricks | An Apache Spark-based analytics platform. You can think of it as “Spark as a service.” It’s the easiest way to use Spark on the Azure platform. It manages the Spark cluster for you. |

Artificial Intelligence (AI)

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Azure Machine Learning Service | A data science solution that enables computers to predict outcomes and trends without being explicitly programmed. It is a cloud service to train, deploy, automate, and manage machine learning models. It is designed to let you start training on a local computer and then scale out to the cloud. Machine learning models created in Machine Learning Studio cannot be deployed or managed by Azure Machine Learning Service. |
| Azure Machine Learning Studio | Gives you a collaborative drag-and-drop visual workspace to work with machine learning solutions without the need to write any code. It allows you to use built-in algorithms, not write custom algorithms. You can build, test, and deploy predictive analytics solutions on your data. Machine Learning Studio solutions are managed in Machine Learning Studio and are only deployed as web services. This makes the model you create accessible to others. |

Serverless computing

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Azure Functions | Provides a solution for building highly reliable and secure serverless apps suppporting multiple programming languages. You can build apps using simple serverless functions with the ability to scale as needed to meet demand. It enables you to focus on building apps without the concerns for server resources. |
| Logic Apps | A cloud service designed to help you automate and orchestrate tasks, workflows, and business processes. Logic Apps is a serverless solution that lets you connect and coordinate systems and applications. |
| Event Grid | Allows you to easily build applications with event-based architectures. It’s a fully-managed, intelligent event routing service that uses a publish-subscribe model for uniform event consumption. |

DevOps solutions

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Azure DevOps | provides version control, reporting, requirements management, project management, automated builds, lab management, testing and release management capabilities. It covers the entire application lifecycle, and enables DevOps capabilities. |
| Azure DevTest Labs | Creates labs consisting of pre-configured bases or Azure Resource Manager templates. These have all the necessary tools and software that you can use to create environments. You can create environments in a few minutes, as opposed to hours or days. |

* *describe the benefits and outcomes of using Azure solutions*

Understand Azure management tools

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Azure Portal | Azure CLI is a cross-platform command-line program that connects to Azure and executes administrative commands on Azure resources. Cross-platform means that it can be run on Windows, Linux, or macOS. |
| Azure Powershell | Azure PowerShell is a module that you add to Windows PowerShell or PowerShell Core that enables you to connect to your Azure subscription and manage resources. |
| Azure CLI | The Azure command-line interface (CLI) is Microsoft’s cross-platform command-line experience for managing Azure resources. The Azure CLI is designed to be easy to learn and get started with, but powerful enough to be a great tool for building custom automation to use Azure resources. |
| Cloud Shell | Azure Cloud Shell is an interactive, authenticated, browser-accessible shell for managing Azure resources. It provides the flexibility of choosing the shell experience that best suits the way you work, either Bash or PowerShell. |
| Azure Advisor | Advisor is a personalized cloud consultant that helps you follow best practices to optimize your Azure deployments. It analyzes your resource configuration and usage telemetry and then recommends solutions that can help you improve the cost effectiveness, performance, high availability, and security of your Azure resources. |

Understand security, privacy, compliance, and trust (25-30%)

Understand securing network connectivity in Azure

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Network Security Groups (NSG) | NSGs operate at layers 3 & 4, and provide a list of allowed and denied communication to and from network interfaces and subnets. NSGs are fully customizable, and give you the ability to fully lock down network communication to and from your virtual machines. By using NSGs, you can isolate applications between environments, tiers, and services. |
| Application Security Groups (ASG) | An application security group is a logical collection of virtual machines (NICs). You join virtual machines to the application security group, and then use the application security group as a source or destination in NSG rules. |
| User Defined Routes (UDR) | Azure routes traffic between all subnets within a virtual network, by default. You can create your own routes to override Azure’s default routing. The ability to create custom routes is helpful if, for example, you want to route traffic between subnets through a network virtual appliance (NVA). |
| Azure Firewall | Azure Firewall is a managed, cloud-based, network security service that protects your Azure Virtual Network resources. It is a fully stateful firewall as a service with built-in high availability and unrestricted cloud scalability. Azure Firewall provides inbound protection for non-HTTP/S protocols. Examples of non-HTTP/S protocols include: Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP), Secure Shell (SSH), and File Transfer Protocol (FTP). It also provides outbound, network-level protection for all ports and protocols, and application-level protection for outbound HTTP/S. |
| Azure DDoS Protection | DDoS Protection leverages the scale and elasticity of Microsoft’s global network to bring DDoS mitigation capacity to every Azure region. The Azure DDoS Protection service protects your Azure applications by scrubbing traffic at the Azure network edge before it can impact your service’s availability. Within a few minutes of attack detection, you are notified using Azure Monitor metrics. |

Describe core Azure Identity services

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Authentication (Who are you?) | The process of establishing the identity of a person or service looking to access a resource. It involves the act of challenging a party for legitimate credentials, and provides the basis for creating a security principal for identity and access control use. It establishes if they are who they say they are. |
| Authorization (What are you allowed to do?) | The process of establishing what level of access an authenticated person or service has. It specifies what data they’re allowed to access and what they can do with it. |
| Azure Active Directory | Azure AD is a cloud-based identity service. It has built in support for synchronizing with your existing on-premises Active Directory or can be used stand-alone. This means that all your applications, whether on-premises, in the cloud (including Office 365), or even mobile can share the same credentials. Administrators and developers can control access to internal and external data and applications using centralized rules and policies configured in Azure AD. To manage resources in Azure AD, such as users, groups, and domains, there are several Azure AD administrator roles. |
| Azure Multi-Factor Authentication | Multi-factor authentication (MFA) provides additional security for your identities by requiring two or more elements for full authentication. These elements fall into three categories: – Something you know – Something you possess – Something you are |

| **authentication type** | **supports MFA** | **supports SSPR** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Password | yes | yes |
| SMS | yes | yes |
| Voice Call | yes | yes |
| App Passwords | sometimes | no |
| MSFT Authenticator | yes | yes |
| OATH Hardware token | Public Preview | yes |
| Security Questions | no | yes |
| Email address | no | yes |

Describe security tools and features of Azure

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Azure Security Center | Security Center is a monitoring service that provides threat protection across all of your services both in Azure, and on-premises. Available in two tiers, Free (limited to assessments and recommendations only); Standard (full suite of security-related services including continious monitoring, threat detection and just-in-time access control) *Usage scenarios:* • Incident Response (Detect, Assess, Diagnose) • Implement Recommendations |
| Key Vault | Azure Key Vault is a secret store: a centralized cloud service for storing application secrets. Key Vault helps you control your applications’ secrets by keeping them in a single central location and providing secure access, permissions control, and access logging. |
| Azure Information Protection (AIP) | Azure Information Protection (sometimes referred to as AIP) is a cloud-based solution that helps an organization to classify and optionally, protect its documents and emails by applying labels. Labels can be applied automatically by administrators who define rules and conditions, manually by users, or a combination where users are given recommendations. The protection technology uses Azure Rights Management (RMS). This protection technology uses encryption, identity, and authorization policies. Similarly to the labels that are applied, protection that is applied by using Rights Management stays with the documents and emails, independently of the location—inside or outside your organization, networks, file servers, and applications. This information protection solution keeps you in control of your data, even when it is shared with other people. |
| Azure Advanced Threat Protection (ATP) | Azure Advanced Threat Protection (ATP) is a cloud-based security solution that leverages your on-premises Active Directory signals to identify, detect, and investigate advanced threats, compromised identities, and malicious insider actions directed at your organization. Azure ATP enables SecOp analysts and security professionals struggling to detect advanced attacks in hybrid environments to: • Monitor users, entity behavior, and activities with learning-based analytics • Protect user identities and credentials stored in Active Directory • Provide clear incident information on a simple timeline for fast triage • Identify and investigate suspicious user activities and advanced attacks throughout the kill chain – Azure ATP identifies these advanced threats at the source throughout the entire cyber-attack kill chain: •*Reconnaissance* – Identify rogue users and attackers’ attempts to gain information. Attackers are searching for information about user names, users’ group membership, IP addresses assigned to devices, resources, and more, using a variety of methods. • *Compromised credentials* – Identify attempts to compromise user credentials using brute force attacks, failed authentications, user group membership changes, and other methods. • *Lateral movements* – Detect attempts to move laterally inside the network to gain further control of sensitive users, utilizing methods such as Pass the Ticket, Pass the Hash, Overpass the Hash and more. • *Domain dominance* – Highlighting attacker behavior if domain dominance is achieved, through remote code execution on the domain controller, and methods such as DC Shadow, malicious domain controller replication, Golden Ticket activities, and more. |

Describe Azure governance methodologies

* *describe policies and initiatives with Azure Policy* – Azure Policy is a service in Azure that you use to create, assign, and manage policies. These policies enforce different rules and effects over your resources, so those resources stay compliant with your corporate standards and service level agreements. Azure Policy meets this need by evaluating your resources for non-compliance with assigned policies. All data stored by Azure Policy is encrypted at rest.
  + *policies* – Every policy definition has conditions under which it’s enforced. And, it has a defined effect that takes place if the conditions are met. To implement these policy definitions (both built-in and custom definitions), you’ll need to assign them. You can assign any of these policies through the Azure portal, PowerShell, or Azure CLI. A policy assignment is a policy definition that has been assigned to take place within a specific scope. This scope could range from a management group to a resource group.
  + *initiatives* – A collection of policy definitions that are tailored towards achieving a singular overarching goal. Initiative definitions simplify managing and assigning policy definitions. They simplify by grouping a set of policies as one single item. For example, you could create an initiative titled Enable Monitoring in Azure Security Center, with a goal to monitor all the available security recommendations in your Azure Security Center. Like a policy assignment, an initiative assignment is an initiative definition assigned to a specific scope. Initiative assignments reduce the need to make several initiative definitions for each scope. This scope could also range from a management group to a resource group. Each initiative is assignable to different scopes. One initiative can be assigned to both subscriptionA and subscriptionB.
* *describe Role-Based Access Control (RBAC)* – Azure RBAC is a newer authorization system that provides fine-grained access management to Azure resources. RBAC includes many built-in roles, can be assigned at different scopes, and allows you to create your own custom roles. The way you control access to resources using RBAC is to create role assignments. This is a key concept to understand – it’s how permissions are enforced. A role assignment consists of three elements: security principal, role definition, and scope.
* *describe Locks* – As an administrator, you may need to lock a subscription, resource group, or resource to prevent other users in your organization from accidentally deleting or modifying critical resources. You can set the lock level to CanNotDelete or ReadOnly. In the portal, the locks are called Delete and Read-only respectively.
* *describe Azure Advisor security assistance* – Azure Advisor provides you with a consistent, consolidated view of recommendations for all your Azure resources. It integrates with Azure Security Center to bring you security recommendations. You can get security recommendations from the Security tab on the Advisor dashboard. Security Center helps you prevent, detect, and respond to threats with increased visibility into and control over the security of your Azure resources. It periodically analyzes the security state of your Azure resources. When Security Center identifies potential security vulnerabilities, it creates recommendations. The recommendations guide you through the process of configuring the controls you need.
* *describe Azure Blueprints* – Simplify largescale Azure deployments by packaging key environment artifacts, such as Azure Resource Manager templates, role-based access controls, and policies, in a single blueprint definition. Easily apply the blueprint to new subscriptions and environments, and fine-tune control and management through versioning.

Understand monitoring and reporting options in Azure

* *describe Azure Monitor* – Azure Monitor maximizes the availability and performance of your applications and services by delivering a comprehensive solution for collecting, analyzing, and acting on telemetry from your cloud and on-premises environments. It helps you understand how your applications are performing and proactively identifies issues affecting them and the resources they depend on. Just a few examples of what you can do with Azure Monitor include:
  + Detect and diagnose issues across applications and dependencies with Application Insights.
  + Correlate infrastructure issues with Azure Monitor for VMs and Azure Monitor for Containers.
  + Drill into your monitoring data with Log Analytics for troubleshooting and deep diagnostics.
  + Support operations at scale with smart alerts and automated actions.
  + Create visualizations with Azure dashboards and workbooks.
* *describe Azure Service Health* – Service Health provides you with a customizable dashboard which tracks the health of your Azure services in the regions where you use them. In this dashboard, you can track active events like ongoing service issues, upcoming planned maintenance, or relevant health advisories. When events become inactive, they get placed in your health history for up to 90 days. Finally, you can use the Service Health dashboard to create and manage service health alerts which proactively notify you when service issues are affecting you. Service Health tracks three types of health events that may impact your resources:
  + Service issues – Problems in the Azure services that affect you right now.
  + Planned maintenance – Upcoming maintenance that can affect the availability of your services in the future.
  + Health advisories – Changes in Azure services that require your attention. Examples include when Azure features are deprecated or if you exceed a usage quota.
* *understand the use cases and benefits of Azure Monitor and Azure Service Health* – Service Health integrates with Azure Monitor to alert you via emails, text messages, and webhook notifications when your business-critical resources are impacted. Set up an activity log alert for the appropriate service health event. Route that alert to the appropriate people in your organization using Action Groups.

Understand privacy, compliance and data protection standards in Azure

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| GDPR | A regulation enforced by a government agency. It is controlled by the European Union (EU). |
| ISO | International Standard Organization (ISO) is a standards-based non-regulatory agency, based in Geneva, Switzerland. |
| NIST | A standards-based non-regulatory agency based in the US. NIST stands for National Institute of Standards and Technology. |
| Microsoft Privacy Statement | The Microsoft privacy statement explains what personal data Microsoft processes, how Microsoft processes it, and for what purposes. |
| Trust center | Trust Center is a website resource containing information and details about how Microsoft implements and supports security, privacy, compliance, and transparency in all Microsoft cloud products and services. The Trust Center is an important part of the Microsoft Trusted Cloud Initiative, and provides support and resources for the legal and compliance community. |
| Service Trust Portal | The Service Trust Portal (STP) hosts the Compliance Manager service, and is the Microsoft public site for publishing audit reports and other compliance-related information relevant to Microsoft’s cloud services. |
| Compliance Manager | Allows you to determine whether or not your services meet industry standards. Compliance Manager is a workflow within Service Trust Portal. It allows you to view a compliance score to determine how well you comply with industry standards. |
| Azure Government cloud services | Uses a physically isolated instance of Azure, but it is not because of strict government data privacy requirements. Azure Government is separate to keep government services and data separate from non-government services and data. Azure Government’s datacenters are only based in the US. |
| Azure China cloud services | Maintain compliance with Chinese laws and regulations when you use Azure China cloud computing services. This physically isolated instance of Azure requires that you have an account separate from an Azure global account—the Azure China pricing is distinct. |
| Azure Germany services | Azure Germany uses a physically isolated instance of Azure to meet strict government data privacy requirements. Germany uses a dedicated trustee of customer data. A local company controls access to customer data, unless the customer grants others access to the data. |

**Understand Azure pricing and support (20-25%)**

Understand Azure subscriptions

* *describe an Azure subscription* – An Azure subscription is a logical container used to provision resources in Microsoft Azure. It holds the details of all your resources like virtual machines, databases, etc.
* *understand the uses and options with Azure subscriptions such access control and offer types* – Azure offers free and paid subscription options to suit different needs and requirements. The most commonly used subscriptions are:
  + Free: An Azure free subscription includes a $200 credit to spend on any service for the first 30 days, free access to the most popular Azure products for 12 months, and access to more than 25 products that are always free.
  + Pay-As-You-Go: A Pay-As-You-Go (PAYG) subscription charges you monthly for the services you used in that billing period. This subscription type is appropriate for a wide range of users, from individuals to small businesses, and many large organizations as well.
  + Enterprise Agreement: An Enterprise Agreement (EA) provides flexibility to buy cloud services and software licenses under one agreement, with discounts for new licenses and Software Assurance. It’s targeted at enterprise-scale organizations.
  + Student: An Azure for Students subscription includes $100 in Azure credits to be used within the first 12 months plus select free services without requiring a credit card at sign-up. You must verify your student status through your organizational email address.
  + Every Azure Subscription Includes
    - Free access to billing and subscription support
    - Azure products and services documentation
    - Online self-help documentation
    - Community support forums
  + Purchasing Options for Azure Products and Services
    - Enterprise: Enterprise customers sign an Enterprise Agreement (EA) with Azure that commits them to spend a negotiated amount on Azure services, which they typically pay annually. Enterprise customers also have access to customized Azure pricing.
    - Web direct: Direct Web customers pay general public prices for Azure resources, and their monthly billing and payments occur through the Azure website.
    - Cloud Solution Provider: Cloud Solution Provider (CSP) typically are Microsoft partner companies that a customer hires to build solutions on top of Azure. Payment and billing for Azure usage occur through the customer’s CSP.
* *understand subscription management using Management groups*

Understand planning and management of costs

* *understand options for purchasing Azure products and services*
* *understand options around Azure Free account* – An Azure free subscription includes a $200 credit to spend on any service for the first 30 days, free access to the most popular Azure products for 12 months, and access to more than 25 products that are always free.
* *understand the factors affecting costs:*
  + Resource Type: Costs are resource-specific, so the usage that a meter tracks and the number of meters associated with a resource depend on the resource type.
  + Service: Azure usage rates and billing periods can differ between Enterprise, Web Direct, and Cloud Solution Provider (CSP) customers. Some subscription types also include usage allowances, which affect costs.
  + Location: Azure has datacenters all over the world. Usage costs vary between locations that offer particular Azure products, services, and resources based on popularity, demand, and local infrastructure costs.
  + Ingress and egress traffic –
    - Following Availability Zone data transfer is charged:
      * Data transfer, ingress and egress, from a VNet resource deployed in an Availability Zone to another resource in different Availability Zone in the same VNET
    - Following Availability Zone data transfer is NOT charged:
      * Data transfer between VNet resources located in same Availability Zone
      * Data transfer between a VNet resource and a Public IP address in the same Azure Region
      * Data transfer between VNet resources located in peered VNets across Availability Zones. This data transfer will be charges as per VNet peering rates.
* *understand Zones for billing purposes* – A zone is a geographical grouping of Azure regions used to determine billing based on data trasnsfers. Billing applies to both incoming and outgoing data and varies by zone. Microsoft has defined four zones for this purpose, simply referrd to as Zone 1, Zone 2, Zone 3, and DE Zone 1. Data transfers between zones and regions in a zone are billed. Data transfers between zones in the same region are not charged. Zones do not impact any other billing factors.
  + A sub-region is the lowest level geo-location that you may select to deploy your applications and associated data. For data transfers (except CDN), the following regions correspond to Zone 1, Zone 2, Zone 3, and DE Zone 1.

| **zone** | **regions** |
| --- | --- |
| Zone 1 | Canada Central, Canada East, North Europe, West Europe, France Central, France South, Switzerland North, Switzerland West, UK South, UK West, Central US, East US, East US 2, US Gov Arizona, US Gov Iowa, US Gov Texas, US Gov Virginia, North Central US, South Central US, West US, West US 2, West Central US |
| Zone 2 | East Asia, Southeast Asia, Australia Central, Australia Central 2, Australia East, Australia Southeast, Central India, Japan East, Japan West, Korea Central, Korea South, South India, West India |
| Zone 3 | Brazil South, South Africa North, South Africa West, UAE Central, UAE North |
| DE Zone 1 | Germany Central, Germany Northeast |

* *understand the Pricing calculator* – The Azure pricing calculator is a free web-based tool that allows you to input Azure services and modify properties and options of the services. It outputs the costs per service and total cost for the full estimate.
* *understand the Total Cost of Ownership (TCO) Calculator* – If you are starting to migrate to the cloud, a useful tool you can use to predict your cost savings is the Total Cost of Ownership (TCO) calculator. TCO helps you estimate cost savings realized by mirating to Azure.
* *understand best practices for minimizing Azure costs*:
  + *performing cost analysis* –
  + *creating spending limits and quotas* – Spending limit in Azure exists to prevent spending over your credit amount. All new customers who sign up for the trial or offers that includes credits over multiple months have the spending limit turned on by default. The spending limit is $0. It can’t be changed. The spending limit isn’t available for subscription types such as Pay-As-You-Go subscriptions and commitment plans.
  + *using tags to identify cost owners* – You can use tags to group your billing data. For example, if you’re running multiple VMs for different organizations, use the tags to group usage by cost center. You can also use tags to categorize costs by runtime environment, such as the billing usage for VMs running in the production environment. When exporting billing data or accessing it through billing APIs, tags are included in that data and can be used to further slice your data from a cost perspective.
  + *using Azure reservations* – Reserved instances are purchased in one-year or three-year terms, with payment required for the full term up front. After it’s purchased, Microsoft matches up the reservation to running instances and decrements the hours from your reservation. Reservations can be purchased through the Azure portal. And because reserved instances are a compute discount, they are available for both Windows and Linux VMs.
  + *using Azure Advisor recommendations* – Does not allow you to determine whether or not your services meet industry standards but rather provides recommendations on high availability, cost, security, and performance. It analyzes theservices that you deploy and tries to find ways to improve the usage of those services.
* *describe Azure Cost Management* – Azure Cost Management is another free, built-in Azure tool that can be used to gain greater insights into where your cloud money is going. You can see historical breakdowns of what services you are spending your money on and how it is tracking against budgets that you have set. You can set budgets, schedule reports, and analyze your cost areas.

Understand the support options available with Azure

|  | **BASIC** | **DEVELOPER** | **STANDARD** | **PROFESSIONAL DIRECT** | **PREMIER** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Scope | Available to all Microsoft Azure accounts | Microsoft Azure: Trial and non-production environments | Microsoft Azure: Production workload environments | Microsoft Azure: Business-critical dependence | All Microsoft Products, including Azure: Substantial dependence across multiple products |
| Customer Service, Self-Help and Communities | 24×7 access to billing and subscription support, online self-help, documentation, whitepapers, and support forums | 24×7 access to billing and subscription support, online self-help, documentation, whitepapers, and support forums | 24×7 access to billing and subscription support, online self-help, documentation, whitepapers, and support forums | 24×7 access to billing and subscription support, online self-help, documentation, whitepapers, and support forums | 24×7 access to billing and subscription support, online self-help, documentation, whitepapers, and support forums |
| Best Practices | Access to full set of Azure Advisor recs | Access to full set of Azure Advisor recs | Access to full set of Azure Advisor recs | Access to full set of Azure Advisor recs | Access to full set of Azure Advisor recs |
| Health Status and Notifications | Access to personalized Service Health Dashboard & Health API | Access to personalized Service Health Dashboard & Health API | Access to personalized Service Health Dashboard & Health API | Access to personalized Service Health Dashboard & Health API | Access to personalized Service Health Dashboard & Health API |
| Technical Support | Not available | Business hours access1 to Support Engineers via email | 24×7 access to Support Engineers via email and phone | 24×7 access to Support Engineers via email and phone | 24×7 access to Support Engineers via email and phone |
| Who Can Open Cases | Not available | Unlimited contacts / unlimited cases | Unlimited contacts / unlimited cases | Unlimited contacts / unlimited cases | Unlimited contacts / unlimited cases |
| Third-Party Software Support | Not available | Interoperability & configuration guidance and troubleshooting | Interoperability & configuration guidance and troubleshooting | Interoperability & configuration guidance and troubleshooting | Interoperability & configuration guidance and troubleshooting |
| Case Severity/ Response Times | Not available | Minimal business impact (Sev C): <8 business hours1 | Minimal business impact (Sev C): <8 business hours1 Moderate business impact (Sev B): <4 hours Critical business impact (Sev A): <1 hour | Minimal business impact (Sev C): <4 business hours1 Moderate business impact (Sev B): <2 hours Critical business impact (Sev A): <1 hour | Minimal business impact (Sev C): <4 business hours1 Moderate business impact (Sev B): <2 hours Critical business impact (Sev A): <1 hour <15 minutes (with Azure Rapid Response or Azure Event Management) |
| Architecture Support | Not available | General guidance | General guidance | Architectural guidance based on best practice delivered by ProDirect Delivery Manager | Customer specific architectural support such as design reviews, performance tuning, configuration and implementation assistance delivered by Microsoft Azure technical specialists. |
| Operations Support | Not available | Not available | Not available | Onboarding services, service reviews, Azure Advisor consultations | Technical account manager-led service reviews and reporting |
| Training | Not available | Not available | Not available | Azure Engineering-led web seminars | Azure Engineering-led web seminars, on-demand training |
| Proactive Guidance | Not available | Not available | Not available | ProDirect Delivery Manager | Designated Technical Account Manager |
| Launch Support | Not available | Not available | Not available | Not available | Azure Event Management (available for additional fee) |
| Pricing | Not available | $29/mo | $100/mo | $1,000/mo | Contact us |

* *understand how to open a support ticket* – Submit a support request from the Azure Portal. Simply select “Support” from the menu bar or open the “Help + support” hub.
* *understand available support channels outside of support plan channels* – Available Support Channels outside of Support Plan Channels
  + Azure Knowledge Center
  + Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN) Forums
  + Stack Overflow
  + Server Fault
  + Azure Feedback Forums
  + Twitter
* *describe the Knowledge Center* – The Azure Knowledge Center is a searchable database that contains answers to common support questions, from a community of Azure experts, developers, customers, and users. You can browse through all responses within the Azure Knowledge Center. Find specific solutions by entering keyword search terms into the text-entry field and further refine your search results by selecting products or tags from the lists provided by two dropdown lists.

Describe Azure Service Level Agreements (SLAs)

* *describe a Service Level Agreement (SLA)* – Formal documents called Service-Level Agreements (SLAs) capture the specific terms that define the performance standards that apply to Azure. SLAs describe Microsoft’s commitment to providing Azure customers with specific performance standards. There are SLAs for individual Azure products and services. SLAs also specify what happens if a service or product fails to perform to a governing SLA’s specification. Note: Azure does not provide SLAs for most services under the Free or Shared tiers.
* *understand Composite SLAs* – When combining SLAs across different service offerings, the resultant SLA is a called a Composite SLA. The resulting composite SLA can provide higher or lower uptime values, depending on your application architecture.
* *understand how to determine an appropriate SLA for an application* – There are three key characteristics of SLAs for Azure products and services:
  + Performance Targets
  + Uptime and Connectivity Guarantees
  + Service credits (percentage of the applicable monthly service fees credited to you if a service fails to meet uptime guarantee)

Understand service lifecycle in Azure

| **term** | **description** |
| --- | --- |
| Public | This means that an Azure feature is available to all Azure customers for evaluation purposes. These previews can be turned on through the preview features page as detailed below. |
| Private | This means that an Azure feature is available to *specific* Azure customers for evaluation purposes. This is typically by invite only and issued directly by the product team responsible for the feature or service. |
| General Availability (GA) | Once a feature has been evaluated and tested successfully, it might be released to customers as part of Azure’s default product set. This release is referred to as General Availability (GA). |

* *understand how to monitor feature updates and product changes* – The Azure portal “What’s New” link on the ? help menu provides a list of recent updates. Alternatively, you can use the Azure Updates page